

# MARC 21 Classification Format



LIBRARY OF CONGRESS /  
NATIONAL LIBRARY OF CANADA







# MARC 21

## Format for **Classification** Data

INCLUDING GUIDELINES FOR CONTENT DESIGNATION



Network Development &  
MARC Standards Office

Library of  
Congress



National Library  
of Canada

Bibliothèque nationale  
du Canada





# MARC 21

## Format for **Classification Data**

INCLUDING GUIDELINES FOR CONTENT DESIGNATION

2000 Edition

### **ASSEMBLY INSTRUCTIONS**

This edition of the *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data* has been designed to fit into one 1 ½ -inch three-ring binder which is supplied with the loose-leaf text of the format. Front and back inside covers on heavier paper are included, along with a set of 18 divider tabs. Most divider tabs are intended to precede a section that bears a similar title (e.g., "1XX Classification Numbers and Terms).

A pair of special tabs, left intentionally blank, have been provided for local use. There are no pages in the published format intended to follow these special tabs. These extra tabs are provided for organizing local MARC classification data element pages or related documentation with the text of the published format.

**(THIS PAGE MAY BE DISCARDED AFTER DOCUMENT ASSEMBLY)**







# MARC 21

## Format for **Classification** Data

INCLUDING GUIDELINES FOR CONTENT DESIGNATION

2000 Edition

Prepared by  
Network Development and MARC Standards Office  
Library of Congress

In cooperation with  
Standards and Support, National Library of Canada

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS  
CATALOGING DISTRIBUTION SERVICE / WASHINGTON

NATIONAL LIBRARY OF CANADA  
OTTAWA



## Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

MARC 21 format for classification data : including guidelines for content designation / prepared by Network Development and MARC Standards Office, Library of Congress in cooperation with Standards and Support, National Library of Canada. -- 2000 ed.

Rev. ed. of: USMARC format for classification data. 1990 ed. c1990; and, Canadian MARC communication format: classification data. 1992. Includes bibliographical references.  
ISBN 0-8444-1000-4

1. Classification--Books--Data processing. 2. MARC formats.  
I. Library of Congress. Network Development and MARC Standards Office.  
II. National Library of Canada. Standards and Support.  
Z696.A4.M365 2000 025.3'16--dc21 99-053383

## Canadian Cataloguing in Publication Data

*Main entry under title:*

MARC 21 format for classification data : including guidelines for content designation

2000 ed.

Loose-leaf for updating.

Issued also in French under title: Format MARC 21 pour les données de classification.

Rev. ed. of USMARC format for classification data, 1990 ed., c1990 and, Canadian MARC communication format: classification data. 1992.

ISBN 0-660-17990-3

CCG cat.no. SN3-270/2000E

1. MARC formats. 2. Classification--Books--Data processing. I. Library of Congress. Network Development and MARC Standards Office. II. National Library of Canada. Standards and Support.

Z696.A4.M365 2000

025.4'2

C00-900063-1

Available in the U.S.A. and other countries from:

Cataloging Distribution Service,  
Library of Congress, Washington, D.C. 20541-4912 U.S.A.

Available in Canada from:

Canadian Government Publishing, Public Works and Government Services Canada  
Ottawa, ON K1A 0S9 Canada  
Catalogue no.: SN3-270/2000E

Copyright (c) 2000 by the Library of Congress except within the USA.  
Copyright (c) Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada (2000)  
as represented by the National Library of Canada.

This publication may be reproduced without permission provided the source is fully acknowledged.

This is a loose-leaf publication intended to be kept up-to-date by the issuing of new and replacement pages. The publication date for the base text is January 2000. It supersedes the December 1990 edition and updates 1-2 of the *USMARC Format for Classification Data* and the 1992 edition of the *Canadian MARC Communication Format: Classification*.



# MARC 21

## Format for Classification Data

Update No. 1

October 2000

### FILING INSTRUCTIONS

This update contains loose-leaf pages to be interfiled in the text of the 2000 edition of the *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data*. Some pages are new, representing newly-defined data elements in the format. However, most pages replace existing pages in the base text. Care should be taken when interfiling replacement pages to be sure needed pages are not discarded. A listing of the substantive changes covered by this update is contained in Appendix E. Changes in the text are marked by a line (|) in the left margin. This mark is used to indicate places where deletions have occurred as well as additions and modifications to the text. This update title page should be filed behind the title page for the base text. Appendix E may be filed in any appropriate location in the text.

Prepared by  
Network Development and MARC Standards Office  
Library of Congress

In cooperation with  
Standards and Support, National Library of Canada

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS  
CATALOGING DISTRIBUTION SERVICE / WASHINGTON

NATIONAL LIBRARY OF CANADA  
OTTAWA



Available in the U.S.A. and other countries from:  
Cataloging Distribution Service,  
Library of Congress, Washington, D.C. 20541-4912 U.S.A.

Available in Canada from:  
Canadian Government Publishing, Public Works and Government Services Canada  
Ottawa, ON K1A 0S9 Canada

Copyright (c) 2000 by the Library of Congress except within the USA.  
Copyright (c) Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada (2000)  
as represented by the National Library of Canada.

This publication may be reproduced without permission provided the source is fully acknowledged.

This update is intended to be interfiled with the base text (January 2000)



# MARC 21

## Format for Classification Data

Update No. 2

October 2001

### FILING INSTRUCTIONS

This update contains loose-leaf pages to be interfiled in the text of the 2000 edition of the *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data*. Some pages are new, representing newly-defined data elements in the format. However, most pages replace existing pages in the base text. This update is divided into two sections. One section contains data element sections or fields issued in their entirety. The other section contains replacements for only parts of a data element section or field. ***Care should be taken when interfiling replacement pages to be sure needed pages are not discarded.*** A listing of the substantive changes covered by this update is contained in Appendix E. Changes in the text are marked by a line (|) in the left margin. This mark is used to indicate places where deletions have occurred as well as additions and modifications to the text. This update title page should be filed behind the title page for the base text. Appendix E may be filed in any appropriate location in the text.

Prepared by  
Network Development and MARC Standards Office  
Library of Congress

In cooperation with  
Standards and Support, National Library of Canada

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS  
CATALOGING DISTRIBUTION SERVICE / WASHINGTON

---

NATIONAL LIBRARY OF CANADA  
OTTAWA



Available in the U.S.A. and other countries from:  
Cataloging Distribution Service,  
Library of Congress, Washington, D.C. 20541-4912 U.S.A.

Available in Canada from:  
Canadian Government Publishing, Public Works and Government Services Canada  
Ottawa, ON K1A 0S9 Canada

Copyright (c) 2001 by the Library of Congress except within the USA.  
Copyright (c) Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada (2001)  
as represented by the National Library of Canada.

This publication may be reproduced without permission provided the source is fully acknowledged.

Update No. 2 (October 2001) is interfiled with the base text of January 2000 as modified  
by Update No. 1 (October 2000).



## **Contents**

### **INTRODUCTION**

- General information
- Scope of the classification format
  - Kinds of classification records
  - Types of numbers
  - Classification number usage in bibliographic and authority records
  - Required classification data fields
- Components of a MARC classification record
  - Description of record parts
  - Multiscript classification records
  - Field and subfield repeatability
  - Fill character and related values
  - Display constants
  - Record content responsibility
- Organization of this document
  - Main parts
  - General information sections
  - Components of the detailed descriptions
  - Typographical conventions
- Standards and other documents related to this format
  - Classification schemes
  - National and international standards
  - MARC standards and other related publications
- Documentation maintenance

### **SUMMARY STATEMENT OF CONTENT DESIGNATORS**

### **LEADER AND DIRECTORY**

### **VARIABLE CONTROL FIELDS**

- 00X Control Fields-General Information
  - 001 Control Number
  - 003 Control Number Identifier
  - 005 Date and Time of Latest Transaction
  - 008 Fixed-Length Data Elements

### **VARIABLE DATA FIELDS**

- 01X-084 Control Information, Numbers and Codes-General Information
  - 010-042 Control Numbers and Codes
  - 066 Character Sets Present
  - 084 Classification Scheme and Edition
- 1XX Classification Numbers and Terms-General Information
- X53 Classification Numbers-General Information
  - 153 Classification Number
  - 154 General Explanatory Index Term
- Tracing and Reference Fields-General Information
  - 253 Complex See Reference
  - 353 Complex See Also Reference
  - 453 Invalid Number Tracing
  - 553 Valid Number Tracing

## Contents

6XX Note Fields  
70X-75X Index Term Fields  
76X Number Building Fields  
856 Electronic Location and Access  
880 Alternate Graphic Representation

**APPENDIX A** - Control Subfields  
**APPENDIX B** - Full Level Record Examples  
**APPENDIX C** - Multiscript Records  
**APPENDIX D** - Glossary  
**APPENDIX E** - Format Changes









# Introduction

The five MARC 21 communication formats, *MARC 21 Format for Authority Data*, *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*, *MARC 21 Format for Holdings Data*, *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data*, and *MARC 21 Format for Community Information*, are widely used standards for the representation and exchange of bibliographic, authority, holdings, classification, and community information data in machine-readable form.

A MARC record is composed of three elements: the record structure, the content designation, and the data content of the record. The **record structure** is an implementation of the international standard *Format for Information Exchange* (ISO 2709) and its American counterpart, *Bibliographic Information Interchange* (ANSI/NISO Z39.2). The **content designation**--the codes and conventions established explicitly to identify and further characterize the data elements within a record and to support the manipulation of that data--is defined by each of the MARC formats. The **content** of the data elements that comprise a MARC record is usually defined by standards outside the formats. Examples are the *Library of Congress Classification* (LCC), the *Dewey Decimal Classification* (DDC) or other classification schemes used by the organization that creates a record. The content of certain coded data elements is defined in the MARC formats (e.g., the Leader, field 00, subfield  $\dagger$ w in the 4XX and 5XX tracing fields.)

The *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data: Including Guidelines for Content Designation* defines the codes and conventions (tags, indicators, subfield codes, and coded values) that identify the data elements in MARC classification records. This document is intended for the use of personnel involved in the creation and maintenance of classification records, in the publication of classification schemes from machine-readable data, as well as those involved in the design and maintenance of systems for the communication and processing of classification records. A section in the documentation entitled **scheme-specific conventions** describes coding practices for the two major classification schemes, the *Library of Congress Classification* and the *Dewey Decimal Classification*.

Classification data may be used for online public catalog retrieval systems, online systems for library classifiers (e.g., for machine-assisted classification), systems for the maintenance and development of classification schedules, validation of classification numbers assigned to bibliographic records, and linking to MARC authority records. Wherever possible, classification data elements were designed to be generic, i.e., usable for any classification scheme. Data element features were designed to accommodate the two major classification schemes in use in the United States: *Dewey Decimal Classification* (DDC) and *Library of Congress Classification* (LCC). A concise version of this specification can be found at <http://www.loc.gov/marc/classification>. A simple field list is located at <http://www.loc.gov/marc/classification/ecadlist.html>.

---

## SCOPE OF THE CLASSIFICATION FORMAT

The *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data* is designed to be a carrier for information about classification numbers and captions associated with them. The source of the information is the classification scheme identified in field 084 (Classification Scheme and Edition), subfield  $\dagger$ a (Classification scheme code).

### Kinds of Classification Records

MARC classification records are distinguished from all other types of MARC records by the presence of code w (Classification data) in Leader/06, Type of record. The *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data* further identifies three kinds of classification records in 008/06, Kind of record:

## Introduction

■ **Schedule** record – A classification data record in which field 153 (Classification Number) contains a classification number or span from the schedule itself, including a number which has been built from applying add instructions (008/06, code a)

■ **Table** record – A classification data record in which field 153 contains a classification number or span from a table. Table numbers generally cannot stand alone and are intended to be added to a base number to form a synthesized classification number (008/06, code b)

■ **Index term** record – A record in which the 1XX field contains a general explanatory term in field 154 (General Explanatory Index Term) that represents a concept that is not related to one classification number or span (008/06, code c)

### Types of Numbers

The MARC classification record is an authority record for the classification number(s) and caption contained in field 153 (Classification Number). Classification numbers with captions may also appear in fields 453 (Invalid Number Tracing) and 553 (Valid Number Tracing). **Index term only** records contain an index term in field 154 (General Explanatory Index Term) instead of a classification number and caption in field 153. Three types of classification numbers are defined in the classification format and identified in 008/07 (Type of classification number):

■ **Single number** – A single classification number is one classification number; the components of which may be contained in a single or repeatable subfield  $\neq$  a (Single number or beginning number of span) in a record.

■ **Defined number span** – A defined number span is a range of classification numbers with a beginning number contained in subfield  $\neq$  a and an ending number contained in subfield  $\neq$  c (Ending number of span). The numbers between the beginning and ending numbers are defined by a separate table or subarrangement.

■ **Summary number span** – A summary number span is also a range of classification numbers with a beginning and an ending number. The caption contained in subfield  $\neq$  j (Caption) summarizes a topic that is represented by the span in subfields  $\neq$  a and  $\neq$  c. A summary number span is not defined by a separate table or subarrangement; instead, the numbers falling within the span are generally defined separately by their own records.

### Classification Number Usage in Bibliographic and Authority Records

MARC bibliographic records may contain classification numbers in fields 050-09X. MARC authority records may contain classification numbers in fields 053 (LC Classification Number) and 083 (Dewey Decimal Classification Number). Classification numbers may be valid, invalid or, in the case of a span, partially valid. A **valid** classification number may be used in a bibliographic or authority record by itself or with additional letters or numbers. In the case of a span, a portion of it may be used in a bibliographic record. In addition a number that has been synthesized by correctly applying a table, internal subarrangement or add instructions to a classification number or span is considered valid for use in a bibliographic or authority record; a classification record may or may not be created for synthesized numbers or numbers within spans.

A **partially valid** classification number span is one in which only the beginning or ending number of a span is valid. Only the valid portion may be used in bibliographic or authority records. An **invalid** number may not be used in a bibliographic or authority record. However, a classification record may



be created for an invalid number in cases where the reference information cannot be communicated by a simple 453 tracing because a more detailed reference note is required. Invalid numbers in a 153 field of an invalid record or in a 453 field (Invalid Number Tracing) may not be used in bibliographic or authority records.

## Required Classification Data Fields

A classification data record should contain at a minimum the following fields:

- 008 Fixed-Length Data Elements
  - 084 Classification Scheme and Edition
  - 153 Classification Number
  - or
  - 154 General Explanatory Index Term
- 

## COMPONENTS OF A MARC CLASSIFICATION RECORD

A MARC classification record consists of three main components: the Leader, the Directory, and the Variable Fields. The following information summarizes the structure of a MARC record. More detail is provided in *MARC 21 Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, and Exchange Media*.

### Description of record parts

■ **Leader** –Data elements that provide information for the processing of the record. The data elements contain numbers or coded values and are identified by relative character position. The Leader is fixed in length at 24 character positions and is the first field of a MARC record.

■ **Directory** –A series of entries that contain the tag, length, and starting location of each variable field within a record. Each entry is 12 character positions in length. Directory entries for variable control fields appear first, sequenced by tag in increasing numerical order. Entries for variable data fields follow, arranged in ascending order according to the first character of the tag. The stored sequence of the variable data fields in a record does not necessarily correspond to the order of the corresponding Directory entries. Duplicate tags are distinguished only by the location of the respective fields within the record. The Directory ends with a field terminator character (ASCII 1E<sub>16</sub>).

■ **Variable fields** –The data in a MARC classification record is organized into **variable fields**, each identified by a three-character numeric tag that is stored in the Directory entry for the field. Each field ends with a field terminator character. The last variable field in a record ends with both a field terminator and a record terminator (ASCII 1D<sub>16</sub>).

There are two types of variable fields:

- **Variable control fields** –The 00X fields. These fields are identified by a field tag in the Directory but they contain neither indicator positions nor subfield codes. The variable control fields are structurally different from the variable data fields. They may contain either a single data element or a series of fixed-length data elements identified by relative character position.
- **Variable data fields** –The remaining variable fields defined in the format. In addition to being identified by a field tag in the Directory, variable data fields contain two **indicator positions** stored at the beginning of each field and a two-character **subfield code** preceding each data element within the field.

## Introduction

The **variable data fields** are grouped into blocks according to the first character of the **tag**, which identifies the function of the data within the record. The type of information in the field is identified by the remainder of the tag.

0XX	Control information, numbers, codes
1XX	Classification numbers and terms
2XX	Complex see references
3XX	Complex see also references
4XX	Invalid number tracings
5XX	Valid number tracings
6XX	Note fields
70X-75X	Linking entries
76X	Number building fields

In the fields that contain classification numbers, references and tracings, the final two characters of the tag are the same. (153, 253, 353, 453, 553)

153	Classification Number
253	Complex See Reference
353	Complex See Also Reference
453	Invalid Number Tracing
553	Valid Number Tracing

Within the 1XX, 4XX, 5XX blocks, certain parallels of content designation are usually preserved in the subfield coding.

Within variable data fields, the following two kinds of content designation are used:

**Indicator positions** - The first two character positions in the variable data fields that contain values which interpret or supplement the data found in the field. Indicator values are interpreted independently, that is, meaning is not ascribed to the two indicators taken together. Indicator values may be a lowercase alphabetic or a numeric character. A blank (ASCII SPACE), represented in this document as a `␣`, is used in an undefined indicator position. In a defined indicator position, a blank may be assigned a meaning, or may mean *no information provided*.

**Subfield codes** - Two characters that distinguish the data elements within a field which require separate manipulation. A subfield code consists of a delimiter (ASCII 1F hex), represented in this document as a `␣`, followed by a data element identifier. Data element identifiers may be a lowercase alphabetic or a numeric character. Subfield codes are defined independently for each field; however, parallel meanings are preserved whenever possible (e.g., in the 153, 453, and 553 fields). Subfield codes are defined for purposes of identification, not arrangement. The order of subfields is generally specified by standards for the data content, such as the classification scheme itself.

### Multiscript Classification Records

A MARC classification record may contain *data* in multiple scripts. One script may be considered the primary script of the *data content* of the record, even though other scripts are also used for data content. (Note: ASCII is used for the structure elements of the record, with most coded data also specified within the ASCII range of characters.) General models for multiscript data are described in Appendix C, along with several full record examples.



**Field and Subfield Repeatability**

Theoretically, all fields and subfields may be repeated. The nature of the data, however, often precludes repetition. For example, a classification record may contain only one 1XX field. The repeatability or non-repeatability of each field and subfield is specified in the format.

**Fill Character and Related Values**

A fill character (ASCII 7C hex), represented in this document as a vertical bar (|), may be used in classification records in field 008, and in control subfield  $\neq w$  of the 453 and 553 fields (Invalid and valid Number Tracing). A fill character may not be used in the Leader, or in tags, indicators, or subfield codes. The use of the fill character in a classification record indicates that the format specifies a code to be used, but the creator of the record has decided not to attempt to supply a code.

Code n (Not applicable) is defined in many coded positions to indicate that the characteristic defined by the position is not applicable to a specific type of number or kind of record.

**Display Constants**

A display constant is a term, phrase, spacing, or punctuation convention that may be system generated under prescribed circumstances in order to make a visual presentation of data in a record more meaningful to a user. In the classification format, certain field tags, subfield codes (e.g., subfields  $\neq c$ ,  $\neq z$ ), indicator values (e.g., field 684, Auxiliary Instruction Note, first indicator, type of note), and coded values (e.g., control subfield  $\neq w/0$ , Special relationship) may be used to generate specific terms, phrases, and/or spacing or punctuation conventions for the display of a record. The use of display constants is determined by each organization or system. Examples of display constants are provided under *Scheme-specific conventions* and *Input Conventions* in the field descriptions.

**Record Content Responsibility**

The *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data* serves as a vehicle for classification data of all types from any organization. In general, the responsibility for the data content, content designation, and transcription of data within a MARC record may be determined by examination of the field indicated in the **responsible parties** section below.

***Responsible Parties***

In *unmodified records*, the organization identified as the original cataloging source in 040 subfield  $\neq a$  is responsible for the content of the record. The organization identified as the transcribing agency in field 040  $\neq c$  is responsible for the content designation and transcription of the data.

In *modified records*, the organizations identified in 040  $\neq a$  and  $\neq d$  (Modifying agency) are collectively responsible for the content of the record. Organizations identified as transcribing or modifying agencies in field 040  $\neq c$  and  $\neq d$  are collectively responsible for the content designation and transcription of the data.

Certain data elements are defined in relation to the authoritative agency that maintains the list or rules upon which the data is based (e.g., field 750, Index Term-Topical). An organization using an authoritative-agency data element must use the authoritative list or rules specified for the data element. These lists or rules are specifically identified in the data element descriptions. The responsibility for the content of the data element belongs to the organization identified in subfields  $\neq a$  and  $\neq d$  of field 040.

Other data elements are defined in the format as being exclusively assigned by a single agency (e.g., field 010, Library of Congress Control Number). The content of agency-assigned elements is always the responsibility of the agency. The content designation and transcription of the data may be the responsibility of another organization identified in subfield  $\neq c$  of field 040.

# Introduction

---

## ORGANIZATION OF THIS DOCUMENT

### Main Parts

The *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data* consists of a Summary Statement of Content Designators followed by a detailed presentation of each content designator. Following the descriptions of the Leader and the Directory, the variable control fields are arranged in field tag order (001-008). The variable data fields are presented in the following groupings in order to bring together fields that serve related functions:

- Numbers and Codes
- Classification Numbers and Terms
- Tracings and Reference Fields
- Note Fields
- Index Term Fields
- Number Building Fields
- Electronic Location and Access

Appendixes to this document provide information about several control subfields (Appendix A), full level record examples (Appendix B), multiscrypt record examples (Appendix C), a glossary of terms used in the document (Appendix D), and lists of changes to the format since the last edition or update (Appendix E).

### General Information Sections

To avoid repetition, general information sections are provided for groups of fields with similar characteristics. These general information sections provide instructions for the content designators that are common to each field in the group. The description for each of the fields refers back to the general information section for that group.

A *X53 General Information* section is provided for Classification Numbers. This general information section provides instructions for the content designators that are common to classification numbers whether they are used in a 153 classification number field or in a 453 or 553 tracing field. The description for each of the classification number fields refers back to the X53 general information section.

A *Tracing and Reference Fields-General Information* section describes the use of the various reference note fields and tracings in constructing displays of cross references from these fields. It also provides instructions for applying subfields  $\dagger i$ ,  $\dagger t$  and  $\dagger w$  in the 453 and 553 tracing fields. The description for each of the reference note fields contains the detailed instructions for the content designators for the field. The user is referred to the Tracing and Reference Fields General Information section only for cross reference display descriptions. The 453 and 553 descriptions refer to both the X53 and the Tracings and References General Information sections for content designator instructions.

In addition, the format includes several general information sections to summarize blocks of fields. These are: 00X (Control Fields), 008 (Fixed-Length Data Elements), 1XX (Classification Numbers and Terms), 01X-08X (Numbers and Codes), 6XX (Note Fields), 70X-75X (Index Term Fields), and 76X (Number Building Fields).



## Components of the Detailed Descriptions

A detailed description generally consists of six parts: content designator listing; character position or field definition and scope; guidelines for applying content designators, with examples; input conventions; and content designator history.

The **content designator listing** area presents

- the name of the content designator
- the repeatability/nonrepeatability code ® or NR)

For the Leader and the variable control fields, the list gives the **name** of the character position and any defined coded value. For the variable data fields, the list gives the name of the indicator positions and any defined coded values and the name of the subfield codes and any defined coded values. For all variable fields, the **repeatability/nonrepeatability code** at the field level specifies whether the field may be repeated in a record. For variable data fields, the subfield repeatability code specifies whether the subfield code may be repeated within a field.

The **character position or field definition and scope** area describes the contents of the character position or field, the appropriateness of its use in specific kinds of bibliographic records, and gives other information, such as field repeatability in particular circumstances, the use of required lists or rules in formulating the data, etc.

The **guidelines for applying content designators** area describes the content and scope of each coded value, indicator, or subfield code and gives other information, such as appropriateness for use and repeatability in certain circumstances. The coded values and subfield codes in this area are presented in alphabetical/numerical order. Examples showing the use of the content designator are provided immediately following the description. The examples illustrate the application of specific MARC content designation. The data may be fuller or less full than would be used in actual cataloging practice. In some cases, policy decisions will need to be made concerning the application of MARC content designation. In addition, further editing, particularly of the *LCC* schedules, may be necessary to encode the data beyond what was done in this document.

The **scheme-specific conventions** area describes inputting practice applicable only to specific classification schemes, as identified by the classification scheme code in field 084 (Classification Scheme and Edition). Examples include the equivalents of scheme-specific terminology in MARC, display constants, and input conventions only applicable to specific schemes.

The **input conventions** area provides general guidance for the application of the content designators, and for such things as punctuation, spacing, and the use of display constants.

The **content designator history** area provides a record of significant content designator changes. The types of changes that are included are:

- newly defined content designators that impact on coding consistency within a file
- redefined codes and values
- changes in codes and values for consistency across MARC specifications
- changes in repeatability when it impacts on file consistency
- restructuring
- obsolete content designation. Obsolete content designation formerly defined in only one format are designated *[USMARC only]* or *[CAN/MARC only]*; unmarked items were defined in both formats.

In the MARC formats, a distinction is made between **obsolete** and **deleted** content designators. An **obsolete** content designator is one that may have been used in MARC records and that may

## Introduction

continue to appear in records created prior to the date it was made obsolete. Obsolete content designators are not used in new records. An obsolete content designator is recorded in the *Content Designator History* area. Content designation instructions are provided for retrospective conversion of records having data elements that would have been identified by the obsolete content designator. A **deleted** content designator is not recorded in the history area and will no longer appear anywhere in the MARC documentation. A content designator that had been reserved in MARC but has not been defined, or one that had been defined but is known with near certainty not to have been used, may be deleted from the format. A deleted content designator is available for redefinition in a format.

### Typographical Conventions

Throughout this document, the following typographical conventions are used:

- 0 - The graphic 0 represents the digit zero in tags, fixed-position character positions, indicator positions, and other places numerics are used. This character must be distinguished from an uppercase letter O in examples or text.
- ␣ - The graphic symbol ␣ is used for a blank in coded fields and in other special situations where the existence of the character blank might be ambiguous. (In most textual examples, the blank is represented in the conventional way, by the absence of a character.)
- ⊢ - The graphic symbol ⊢ is used for the delimiter portion of a subfield code. Within the text, subfield codes are referred to as *subfield ⊢a*, for example.
- / - Specific character positions of the Leader, Directory, field 008, and subfield ⊢w are expressed using a slash and the number of the character position, e.g., Leader/06, ⊢w/0.
- 1 - The graphic 1 represents the digit one. This character must be distinguished from a lowercase alphabet letter l (el) and uppercase alphabetic letter I (eye) in examples or text.
- | - The graphic | represents a fill character in MARC examples. When this mark appears in the left margin, it indicates areas of the text of this document where changes have been made.

---

## STANDARDS AND OTHER DOCUMENTS RELATED TO THIS FORMAT

The *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data* should be used with the following standards and related documentation. When a standard is applicable to data in specific fields of the format, the fields are given in brackets following the citation.

### Classification Schemes

*Class FC: A Classification for Canadian History*. Ottawa: National Library of Canada

*Class PS8000: A Classification for Canadian Literature*. Ottawa: National Library of Canada

Dewey, Melvil. *Abridged Dewey Decimal Classification and Relative Index*. Albany: Forest Press

Dewey, Melvil. *Dewey Decimal Classification and Relative Index*. Albany: Forest Press

*DC&: Dewey Decimal Classification Additions, Notes and Decisions*. Albany: Forest Press

*Library of Congress Classification*

*LC Classification –Additions and Changes*

National Library of Medicine. *National Library of Medicine Classification*. Washington: for sale by the Supt. of Docs., U.S.G.P.O.

*Universal Decimal Classification*. London: British Standards Institution [also published in other languages and various editions]



## National and International Standards:

ISO publications may be obtained from the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) ([www.iso.ch](http://www.iso.ch)) and its agents; and ANSI/NISO Z39 publications may be obtained from the National Information Standards Organization (NISO) ([www.niso.org](http://www.niso.org)).

*Format for Information Exchange* (ISO 2709) and *Bibliographic Information Interchange* (ANSI/NISO Z39.2)

*Representations of Dates and Times* (ISO 8601)

## MARC Standards and other related publications:

These publications are available from the Library of Congress, Cataloging Distribution Service, Washington, DC 20541, USA (Worldwide distribution) and Canadian Government Publishing - PWGSC, Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0S9, Canada (Canadian distribution). Where indicated these publications are available on the Internet.

*MARC 21 Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, and Exchange Media*  
([www.loc.gov/marc/specifications](http://www.loc.gov/marc/specifications))

*MARC Code List for Languages* ([www.loc.gov/marc/languages](http://www.loc.gov/marc/languages))

*MARC Code List for Organizations* (earlier title: *Symbols of American Libraries*)

*MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions* ([www.loc.gov/marc/relators](http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators))

*Symbols and Interlibrary Loan Policies in Canada* ([www.nlc-bnc.ca/6/16/s16-202-e.html](http://www.nlc-bnc.ca/6/16/s16-202-e.html))

*MARC 21 Concise Formats* (all five formats in concise form) ([www.loc.gov/marc/concise](http://www.loc.gov/marc/concise))

*MARC 21 LITE Bibliographic Format* ([www.loc.gov/marc/bibliographic/lite/](http://www.loc.gov/marc/bibliographic/lite/))

*MARC 21 Format for Authority Data*

*MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*

*Subject Cataloging Manual: Classification*

*Subject Cataloging Manual: Shelflisting*

*Subject Cataloging Manual: Subject Headings*

---

## DOCUMENTATION MAINTENANCE

The *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data* is prepared by the Network Development and MARC Standards Office, Library of Congress, in cooperation with Standards and Support, National Library of Canada. Please direct any questions related to the content of this document to either:

Network Development and MARC Standards Office  
Library of Congress  
101 Independence Avenue, S.E.  
Washington, DC 20540-4402, USA  
Fax: +1-202-707-0115  
Email: [ndmso@loc.gov](mailto:ndmso@loc.gov)

Standards and Support  
National Library of Canada  
395 Wellington St.  
Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0N4, Canada  
Fax: +1-819-953-0291  
Email: [marc@nlc-bnc.ca](mailto:marc@nlc-bnc.ca)

## Introduction

The *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data* is organized on a field-by-field basis with each field separately paged to facilitate the updating of fields. Periodic updates of new and replacement pages for the base text and cumulated versions of the base text will be available from the Cataloging Distribution Service, Library of Congress, Washington, DC 20541-5017, USA (Worldwide distribution) and from the Canadian Government Publishing, Public Works and Government Services Canada (PWGSC), Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0S9, Canada (Canadian distribution). Their availability will be announced on the Library of Congress MARC website ([www.loc.gov/marc](http://www.loc.gov/marc)), the National Library of Canada MARC website ([www.nlc-bnc.ca/6/19/](http://www.nlc-bnc.ca/6/19/)), on listservs, and through press releases to the library press and to those who purchase the initial base volume. Updates are also available on standing order from the Library of Congress and the Canadian Government Publishing-PWGSC. This publication and all updates are supplied to all purchasers of the Library of Congress MARC Distribution Service tapes of classification records as part of their tape subscription.

---







# MARC 21 Format for Classification Data

## SUMMARY STATEMENT OF CONTENT DESIGNATORS

**LEADER****DIRECTORY****VARIABLE CONTROL FIELDS**

001	Control Number
003	Control Number Identifier
005	Date and Time of Latest Transaction
008	Fixed-Length Data Elements

**VARIABLE DATA FIELDS***Control Information, Numbers and Codes*

010	Library of Congress Control Number
016	National Bibliographic Agency Control Number
035	System Control Number
040	Record Source
042	Authentication Code
066	Character Sets Present
084	Classification Scheme and Edition

*Classification Numbers and Terms*

153	Classification Number
154	General Explanatory Index Term

*Tracing and References*

253	Complex See Reference
353	Complex See Also Reference
453	Invalid Number Tracing
553	Valid Number Tracing

*Notes*

680	Scope Note
681	Classification Example Tracing Note
683	Application Instruction Note
684	Auxiliary Instruction Note
685	History Note
686	Relationship to Source Note

*Index Terms*

700	Index Term—Personal Name
710	Index Term—Corporate Name
711	Index Term—Meeting Name
720	Index Term—Uncontrolled Name
730	Index Term—Uniform Title
750	Index Term—Topical
751	Index Term—Geographic Name
753	Index Term—Uncontrolled
754	Index Term—Faceted Topical Terms



## Summary

### *Number Building Fields*

- 761      Add or Divide Like Instructions
- 762      Table Identification
- 763      Internal Subarrangement or Add Table Entry
- 764      Rule Identification
- 765      Synthesized Number Components
- 768      Citation and Preference Order Instructions

### *Location , Alternate Graphics*

- 856      Electronic Location and Access
- 880      Alternate Graphic Representation







## Leader (NR)

### Indicators and Subfield Codes

The Leader has no indicators or subfield codes; the data elements are positionally defined.

### Character Positions

00-04 Record length

05 Record status

- a Increase in encoding level
- c Corrected or revised
- d Deleted
- n New

06 Type of record

- w Classification data

07-08 Undefined character positions

09 Character coding scheme

- b MARC-8
- a UCS/Unicode

10 Indicator count

11 Subfield code length

12-16 Base address of data

17 Encoding level

- n Complete classification record
- o Incomplete classification record

18-19 Undefined character positions

#### *20-23 Entry map*

20 Length of the length-of-field portion

21 Length of the starting-character-position portion

22 Length of the implementation-defined portion

23 Undefined

### FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

The Leader is the first field of a classification record. It is fixed in length at 24 character positions (00-23). The Leader consists of data elements that contain numbers or coded values that define the parameters for the processing of the record.

## Leader

Character positions 20-23 comprise the Entry map for the Directory. They contain four one-character numbers that specify the structure of the entries in the Directory. More detailed information about the structure of the Leader is contained in *MARC 21 Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, and Exchange Media*.

---

### GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

#### ■ CHARACTER POSITIONS

##### 00-04 - Record length

The Record length character positions contain a five-character number equal to the length of the entire record, including itself and the record terminator. The number is right justified and unused positions contain zeros.

---

##### 05 - Record status

The Record status character position contains a one-character alphabetic code that indicates the relationship of the record to a file for file maintenance purposes.

###### a - Increase in encoding level

Code a indicates that the Encoding level (Leader/17) of the record has been changed from o (Incomplete classification record) to n (Complete classification record).

###### c - Corrected or revised

Code c indicates that an addition/change has been made to the record. The change, however, does not constitute an increase in the Encoding level (Leader/17) of the record.

###### d - Deleted

Code d indicates that the record has been deleted.

###### n - New

Code n indicates that the record is a newly input record.

---

##### 06 - Type of record

The Type of record character position contains a one-character alphabetic code that indicates the characteristics of and defines the components of the record.

###### w - Classification data

Code w indicates that the content of the record constitutes a classification record. The specific kind of authority record is identified by the code in 008/06 (Kind of record).

---

##### 07-08 - Undefined character positions

These two character positions are undefined; each contains a blank (b).

###### bb - Undefined character positions

---

**09 - Character coding scheme**

This character position contains a code that identifies the character coding scheme used in a record. The coding scheme used affects the number of octets needed per character, the placement of non-spacing characters, and the use of escape sequences and may affect the character repertoire. Detailed information on the character sets used in MARC 21 records is contained in *MARC 21 Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, and Exchange Media*.

**b - MARC-8**

Code **b** indicates that the character coding in the record uses the 8-bit character sets described in *MARC 21 Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, and Exchange Media*. Non-default character sets used are identified in field 066.

**a - UCS/Unicode**

Code **a** indicates that the character coding in the record makes use of characters from the Universal Coded Character Set (UCS) (ISO 10646), or Unicode™, an industry subset.

---

**10 - Indicator count**

The Indicator count character position contains a one-character number equal to the number of indicators occurring in each variable data field. (An indicator character position contains a code which conveys information that interprets or supplements the data found in the field.) In MARC 21, two character positions at the beginning of each variable data field are reserved for indicators; therefore, the Indicator count is always 2.

**2 - Number of character positions used for indicators**

---

**11 - Subfield code length**

The Subfield code length character position contains a one-character number equal to the number of character positions used for a subfield code in variable data fields. (Each data element in a variable data field is identified by a subfield code.) In MARC 21, a subfield code consists of a delimiter (≠) and a lowercase alphabetic or numeric data element identifier; therefore, the Subfield code count is always 2.

**2 - Number of character positions used for a subfield code**

---

**12-16 - Base address of data**

The Base address of data character positions contain a five-character number that specifies the first character position of the first variable control field in the record. The number is the base from which the starting character position of all the other fields in the record is addressed in the Directory. (The starting character position in the Directory entry for each field of the record is relative to the first character of the first variable control field rather than the beginning of the record.) The Base address of data is equal to the sum of the lengths of the Leader and the Directory, including the field terminator character at the end of the Directory. The number is right justified and unused positions contain zeros.

**<number> - Length of Leader and Directory (including the Directory field terminator character)**

---



## Leader

### 17 - Encoding level

The Encoding level character position contains a one-character alphanumeric code that indicates whether the classification record is complete or incomplete.

#### **n - Complete authority record**

Code n indicates that the classification record is complete.

#### **o - Incomplete authority record**

Code o indicates that the classification record is incomplete because it does not yet contain all the information needed for a complete record. This character position is used for new records that are incomplete; previously completed records in the process of being changed are coded n in this character position and in 008/10 (Record update in process), they are coded b (Record is being updated).

---

### 18-19 - Undefined character positions

These two character positions are undefined; each contains a blank (b).

#### **bb - Undefined character positions**

---

### 20 - Length of the length-of-field portion

In MARC 21, the length-of-field portion of each Directory entry is always 4 character positions in length.

#### **4 - Number of characters in the length-of-field portion of a Directory entry**

---

### 21 - Length of the starting-character-position portion

In MARC 21, the starting-character-position portion of each Directory entry is always 5 character positions in length.

#### **5 - Number of characters in the starting-character-position portion of a Directory entry**

---

### 22 - Length of the implementation-defined portion

In MARC 21, a Directory entry does not contain an implementation-defined portion; this character position always contains a 0.

#### **0 - Number of characters in the implementation-defined portion of a Directory entry**

---

### 23 - Undefined

In MARC 21, this character position is undefined; it always contains a 0.

#### **0 - Undefined**

---

---

**INPUT CONVENTIONS**

**System-Generated Elements** - The following Leader elements are usually system generated:

00-04	Logical record length
06	Type of record
07-08	Undefined character positions
09	Character coding scheme
10	Indicator count
11	Subfield code count
12-16	Base address of data
18-19	Linked record requirement
20-23	Entry map

It is common for default values in other Leader elements to be generated automatically as well.

**Capitalization** - Alphabetic codes are input as lower case letters.

---





**Directory (NR)****Indicators and Subfield Codes**

The Directory has no indicators or subfield codes; the data elements are positionally defined.

**Character Positions**

00-02 Tag  
03-06 Field length  
07-11 Starting character position

---

---

**CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

The Directory consists of a series of fixed length entries, with one entry for each variable field (control or data) present in a record. Each Directory entry is 12 character positions in length and contains three portions: the field tag, the field length, and the starting character position. The Directory immediately follows the Leader at the beginning of the record and is located at character position 24. The Field length and Starting character position portions of the Directory are defined by Leader/20-23 (Entry map) as being 4 and 5 characters in length, respectively. Because a field tag is always 3 characters, the length of the Tag portion of the Directory is not specified in the Entry map.

More detailed information about the structure of the Directory entries is contained in the *MARC 21 Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, and Exchange Media*.

---

**DESCRIPTION OF A DIRECTORY ENTRY****■ CHARACTER POSITIONS****00-02 - Tag**

The Tag portion of each Directory entry consists of three ASCII numeric or ASCII alphabetic characters (upper case or lower case, but not both) that identify an associated variable field.

**03-06 - Field length**

The Field length portion of each Directory entry consists of four ASCII numeric characters that specify the length of the variable field to which the entry corresponds. This length includes the indicators, subfield codes, data, and the field terminator associated with the field. A Field length number of less than four digits is right justified and unused positions contain zeros.

**07-11 - Starting character position**

The Starting character position of each Directory entry contains five ASCII numeric characters that specify the starting character position of the variable field to which the entry corresponds relative to the Base address of data (Leader/12-16) of the record. A Starting character position number of less than five digits is right justified and unused positions contain zeros.

# Directory

## ■ EXAMPLE

	<u>Tag</u>	<u>Field length</u>	<u>Starting character position</u>
Entry 1	001	0013	00000
Entry 2	005	0016	00013
Entry 3	008	0015	00029
Entry 4	153	0040	00044

---

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

Each Directory entry is system generated.

---







**00X Control Fields—General Information**

- 001 Control Number (NR)
- 003 Control Number Identifier (NR)
- 005 Date and Time of Latest Transaction (NR)
- 008 Fixed-Length Data Elements (NR)

---

**DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

The control fields contain record control number and coded information used in the processing of MARC classification records. These fields have no indicators or subfield codes.

Each data element in the fixed-length 008 field is positionally defined. A detailed explanation of these positionally-defined data elements can be found in the field description.

---





**001 Control Number (NR)****Indicators and Subfield Codes**

This field has no indicators or subfield codes.

---

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains the control number assigned by the organization creating, using, or distributing the record. For interchange purposes, documentation of the structure of the control number and input conventions should be provided to exchange partners by the organization initiating the interchange. The MARC code identifying whose system control number is present in field 001 is contained in field 003 (Control Number Identifier). An organization using a record of another organization may move the incoming control number from field 001 (and the control number identifier from field 003) to field 035 (System Control Number), 010 (Library of Congress Control Number), or 016 (National Bibliographic Agency Control Number), as appropriate, and place its own system control number in field 001 (and its control number identifier in field 003).

**■ EXAMPLE**

001 cf**b**900000001**b**

003 DLC

010 **b**~~b~~cf**b**900000001**b**

*[LC generally supplies its control number in both fields 001 and 010]*

---

**INPUT CONVENTIONS**

Field 001 may be system generated. The structures of the Library of Congress and National Library of Canada control numbers are described in *Input Conventions* under field 010 (Library of Congress Control Number) and field 016 (National Bibliographic Agency Control Number), respectively.

---



**003 Control Number Identifier (NR)****Indicators and Subfield Codes**

This field has no indicators or subfield codes.

---

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains the MARC code for the agency whose system control number is present in field 001 (Control Number). For organizations in the U.S. and countries other than Canada, the source of this code is the *MARC Code List for Organizations* that is maintained by the Library of Congress. For Canadian organizations, the source of the code is *Symbols and Interlibrary Loan Policies in Canada* that is maintained by the National Library of Canada.

An organization using a MARC record from another system and putting its own number in field 001 (Control Number) must also use its own MARC code in field 003.

**■ EXAMPLES**

001 cfb86104358b

003 DLC

001 14919759

003 OcoLC

001 bbbbbb9007496

003 DNLM

001 0010C0086bb

003 CaOONL

---

**INPUT CONVENTIONS**

Field 003 is usually system generated.

---





**005 Date and Time of Latest Transaction (NR)****Indicators and Subfield Codes**

This field has no indicators or subfield codes.

---

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains 16 characters that specify the date and time of the latest record transaction. The date and time serve as a version identifier for the record. They are recorded according to *Representation of Dates and Times* (ISO 8601).

The date requires 8 numeric characters in the pattern *yyyymmdd* (4 for the year, 2 for the month, and 2 for the day). The time requires 8 numeric characters in the pattern *hhmmss.f* (2 for the hour, 2 for the minute, 2 for the second, and 2 for a decimal fraction of the second, including the decimal point). The 24-hour clock (00-23) is used.

The date on which a record is first entered into machine-readable form is contained in field 008/00-05. The Date entered on file never changes.

**■ EXAMPLE**

005 19910201141236.0  
*[February 1, 1991, 212:36 P.M. (14:12 36)]*

---

**INPUT CONVENTIONS**

Field 005 should be system generated at date and time of latest transaction on a record.

---



## 008 Fixed-Length Data Elements (NR)

### Indicators and Subfield Codes

Field 008 has no indicators or subfield codes; the data elements are positionally defined.

### Character Positions

00-05	Date entered on file <i>[See position description for specifications]</i>	09	Standard or optional designation a Standard b Optional n Not applicable
06	Kind of record a Schedule record b Table record c Index term record	10	Record update in process a Record can be used b Record is being updated
07	Type of number a Single number b Defined number span c Summary number span n Not applicable	11	Level of establishment a Fully established c Provisional
08	Classification validity a Valid b First number of span invalid c Last number of span invalid d Completely invalid e Obsolete n Not applicable	12	Synthesized number indication a Not synthesized b Synthesized n Not applicable
		13	Display controller a Displayed in standard schedules or tables b Extended display

---

### CHARACTER POSITION DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains 14 character positions (00-13) that provide coded information about the record as a whole or about data in field 153 (Classification Number). These coded data elements are potentially useful for retrieval and data management purposes.

The data elements are positionally defined. All defined character positions must contain either a defined code or a fill character (|).

---

### GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

#### ■ CHARACTER POSITIONS

##### 00-05 - Date entered on file

Six numeric characters specify the date the record was first entered into machine-readable form. The date is given in the pattern *yymmdd* (*yy* for the year, *mm* for the month, and *dd* for the day). The date entered on file in 008/00-05 is never changed. The date and time of latest transaction information in field 005 changes each time a transaction is made to the record. The

latest transaction information enables an organization handling more than one version of a record to identify the most current version. The fill character (|) is not allowed in any of these positions. Field 008/00-05 is usually system generated.

## 06 - Kind of record

A one-character alphabetic code indicates whether the classification record contains data from a schedule, a table, or an index. The classification scheme is identified in field 084 (Classification Scheme and Edition). A schedule or table record contains a number in the field 153 (Classification Number).

An index term record contains field 154 (General Explanatory Index Term) and does not contain field 153, because the index term cannot be attached to a record for a classification number or span.

### a - Schedule record

Code a indicates that the classification record is from a schedule. A record for a synthesized classification number that is built by using add or divide like instructions or by applying a table is considered a schedule record.

008/06 a

084 0b ≠ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ≠ aHT169.6 ≠ hCommunities. Classes. Races ≠ hUrban groups. The city. Urban sociology ≠ hCity planning ≠ hZoning ≠ jGeneral works.

008/06 a

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a338.5 ≠ hSocial Sciences ≠ hEconomics ≠ hProduction ≠ jGeneral production economics

### b - Table record

Code b indicates that the classification record is from a table. The table is identified in subfield ≠ z (Table number). A record for a synthesized table number that is built by using add or divide like instructions is considered a table record.

008/06 b

084 0b ≠ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ≠ zN4 ≠ a10.5 ≠ hTables of regions or countries (300 numbers-A) ≠ hUnited States ≠ jMiddle Atlantic States

008/06 b

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ z2 ≠ a7471 ≠ hGeographic Areas, Historical Periods, Persons ≠ kSpecific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds ≠ kThe modern world; extraterrestrial worlds ≠ hNorth America ≠ kSpecific states of United States ≠ hNortheastern United States (New England and Middle Atlantic states) ≠ kMiddle Atlantic states ≠ hNew York ≠ jNew York. Borough of Manhattan (Manhattan Island, New York County)

### c - Index term record

Code c indicates that the record is for an explanatory index term that represents a concept. An index term record must also contain a field 753 (Index Term-Uncontrolled) with explanatory information.



**008/06 c**

084 0b ≠ anlm ≠ c5th ed., rev. [National Library of Medicine Classification]

154 bb ≠ aBibliography

753 bb ≠ iOf subjects represented in NLM's classification, appropriate classification number preceded by the letter Z

**07 - Type of number**

A one-character alphabetic code indicates whether field 153 (Classification Number) contains a single number, a defined number span, or a summary number span. A record containing code c (Index term record) in 008/06 (Kind of record) contains code n in this character position.

**Scheme-specific conventions (Library of Congress Classification)** - An A-Z subarrangement is coded as a defined number span (value b). Code c (Summary number span) may be used to suppress the classification number span upon display if it is desirable to display only the classification caption.

**Scheme-specific conventions (Dewey Decimal Classification)** - Defined number spans (code b) are also referred to in the *Dewey Decimal Classification* as *spans in the number column*. Summary number spans (code c) are called *centered entries*.

**a - Single number**

Code a indicates that field 153 (Classification Number) contains a single classification number.

**008/07 a**

084 0b ≠ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ≠ aHB1321 ≠ hEconomic theory. Demography ≠ hDemography. Population. Vital events ≠ hDeaths. Mortality ≠ jGeneral works

**008/07 a**

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a005.2 ≠ hGeneralities ≠ hComputer programming, programs, data ≠ kComputer programming and programs ≠ j Programming for specific types of computers, for specific operating systems, for specific user interfaces

**b - Defined number span**

Code b indicates that field 153 contains a classification number span that is defined by a separate table or subarrangement. The table or subarrangement is identified in field 76X (Table Identification) in subfield ≠ z. Generally, individual records are not created for each classification number falling within the span. However, some institutions may create classification records for synthesized numbers within a defined number span.

**008/07 b**

084 0b ≠ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ≠ aHV9501 ≠ cHV9920.5 ≠ hSocial pathology. Social and public welfare. Criminology ≠ hCriminal justice administration ≠ hPenology. Prisons. Corrections ≠ hBy region or country ≠ jOther regions or countries (1801- )

762 bb ≠ zH9

**008/07 b**

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ‡ a371.2191 ‡ c371.2199 ‡ hSocial sciences ‡ hEducation ‡ hSchools and their activities; special education ‡ kSchools and their activities ‡ hSchool administration; administration of student academic activities ‡ kAdministration of student academic activities ‡ hAdmissions and related topics ‡ hSchool enrollment ‡ jGeographic treatment of school enrollment

761 b0 ‡ iAdd to base number ‡ b371.219 ‡ inotation ‡ z2 ‡ d1 ‡ c9 ‡ ifrom Table 2, e.g., school enrollment in Communist countries ‡ e371.2191717

**c - Summary number span**

Code c indicates that field 153 contains a number span consisting of the first and last number of the topics subordinate to the caption in subfield ‡j (Caption). Generally, individual records are created for each established classification number falling within the span.

**008/07 c**

084 0b ‡ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ‡ aHV1571 ‡ cHV2349 ‡ hSocial pathology. Social and public welfare. Criminology ‡ hProtection, assistance and relief ‡ hHandicapped ‡ jBlind

**008/07 c**

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ‡ a712.5 ‡ c712.7 ‡ hThe arts. Fine and decorative arts ‡ kFine and decorative arts ‡ hCivic and landscape art ‡ hLandscape architecture (Landscape design) ‡ jSpecific kinds of land tracts

**n - Not applicable**

Code n indicates that the code is not applicable, because the record does not contain a field 153.

008/06 c [index term record]

**008/07 n**

084 0b ‡ anlm ‡ c5th ed., rev. [National Library of Medicine Classification]

154 bb ‡ aResearch

753 bb ‡ iForm number 20 or 20.5 in any NLM schedule where applicable

**08 - Classification validity**

A one-character alphabetic code indicates whether the classification number or span in field 153 (Classification Number) is valid, partially invalid, completely invalid, or obsolete. This character position does not contain information about whether the classification number is a standard or optional one. That information is in 008/09 (Standard or optional designation). A record containing code c (Index term record) in 008/06 (Kind of record) contains code n in this character position.

**Scheme-specific conventions (Library of Congress Classification)** - For display purposes, parentheses around the number may be generated from the information in this character position to designate that it is invalid, or in cases where one number of the span is invalid, around the portion that is invalid.

**Scheme-specific conventions (Dewey Decimal Classification)** - For display purposes, brackets around the number may be generated from the information in this character position to designate that it is invalid. For a classification number span, both numbers in the span are either valid or invalid.

**a - Valid**

Code a indicates that field 153 contains either a valid classification number or a valid span in which both the first and last numbers of the span are valid. A valid classification number may be assigned to a bibliographic or authority record either by itself or with additional classification number elements. In the case of a span, any portion of it may be assigned to a bibliographic or authority record.

008/08 a

084 0b ‡ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ‡ aPQ4315.25 ‡ hItalian literature ‡ hIndividual authors and works to 1400. ‡ hDante Alighieri, 1265-1321 ‡ hTranslations. ‡ hEnglish. ‡ hDivina commedia. ‡ hInferno. ‡ jParticular cantos

008/08 a

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ‡ a338.5144 ‡ hSocial sciences ‡ hEconomics ‡ hProduction ‡ hGeneral production economics ‡ hCosts ‡ hElements in cost calculation ‡ jSize of enterprise

**b - First number of span invalid**

Code b indicates that field 153 contains a classification number span in which the first number in the span is invalid. In the case of the *Library of Congress Classification*, if any element of the first or last classification number in a number span is invalid, code b or c is used.

008/08 b

084 0b ‡ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ‡ aHE386.5 ‡ cHE387 ‡ hTransportation and communications ‡ hWater transportation ‡ hWaterways ‡ hInternational waterways ‡ jSound duties  
[Classification number display: HE386(.5)-HE387]

**c - Last number of span invalid**

Code c indicates that field 153 contains a classification number span in which the last number in the span is invalid. In the case of the *Library of Congress Classification*, if any element of the first or last classification number in a number span is invalid, code b or c is used.

008/08 c

084 0b ‡ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ‡ aKFC1 ‡ cKFC1199.5 ‡ jUnited States (California)  
[The last number in the span, KFC 1199.5, is an invalid number, referring to KFX subclass; a tracing from KFC 1199.5 appears in the record for KFX.]

**d - Completely invalid**

Code d indicates that field 153 contains a classification number or span that is completely invalid. This code is used when a record is created for an invalid number when a simple see reference may not be used because it cannot adequately convey the relationship between classification numbers. This classification number may be a single invalid number or a span



in which both the beginning and ending numbers are invalid. The record may contain field 253 (Complex See Reference) to guide the user to a valid number.

#### 008/08 d

084 0b ‡ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ‡ aKF175 ‡ hUnited States (General) ‡ jPeriodicals

253 0b ‡ iFor periodicals consisting primarily of informative material (newsletters, bulletins, etc.) relating to a particular subject, see subject and form division, "Periodicals"

253 0b ‡ iFor law reports, official bulletins or circulars, and official gazettes intended chiefly for the publication of laws and regulations, see appropriate entries in the text or form division tables

*[A record is made for the invalid number because the information in the first 253 field (Complex See Reference) cannot be attached as a tracing to any classification number record.]*

#### 008/08 d

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ‡ a130.112 ‡ hPhilosophy, paranormal phenomena, psychology ‡ hParanormal phenomena ‡ hPhilosophy and theory ‡ hSystems ‡ jForecasting and forecasts

253 1b ‡ iDo not use; class comprehensive works on parapsychological and occult forecasting and forecasts in ‡ a 133.3. ‡ i Class a specific type of forecasting or forecast with the type, without adding notation ‡ z 1 ‡ a 0112 ‡ i from Table 1, e.g., astrological methods of forecasting ‡ a133.5

*[A record is made for the invalid number, since the see reference (field 253) cannot be made a tracing (field 453) because there is no one classification number or span to which it can be attached.]*

#### e - Obsolete

Code e indicates that field 153 contains an obsolete classification number or span. An obsolete number is one that was once valid but is no longer valid. Further information about the history of the classification number may be found in field 685 (History Note). The record may contain a valid number in field 253 (Complex See Reference) to guide the user.

#### 008/08 e

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ‡ a 627.136 ‡ h Technology (Applied sciences) ‡ h Engineering and allied operations ‡ hHydraulic engineering ‡ h Inland waterways ‡ h Canals ‡ j Maintenance and repair

253 0b ‡ iComprehensive works on maintenance and repair of canals relocated to ‡ a 627.130288; ‡ i maintenance and repair of ship canals relocated to ‡ a 627.1370288; ‡ i maintenance and repair of barge canals relocated to ‡ a 627.1380288

#### 008/08 e

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ‡ a297.19 ‡ hReligion ‡ hComparative religion and religions other than Christianity ‡ kReligions other than Christianity ‡ hIslam, Babism, Bahai Faith ‡ kIslam ‡ k Sources of Islam; Islamic doctrinal theology (Āqāid and Kalām); Islam and secular disciplines; Islam and other systems of belief; Islamic worship ‡ hSources of Islam ‡ jMythology

685 12 ‡ iProvision discontinued because without meaning in context ‡ d19960930 ‡ 2 21



**n - Not applicable**

Code n indicates that the code is not applicable, because the record does not contain a field 153.

008/06 c [index term record]

008/08 n

084 0b ≠ anlm ≠ c5th ed., rev. [National Library of Medicine Classification]

154 bb ≠ aFollow-up studies

753 bb ≠ iForm number 20 in any NLM schedule where applicable

753 bb ≠ iln a particular area, with the subject of the original study, e.g. Heart Diseases, ≠ eWG210

**09 - Standard or optional designation**

A one-character alphabetic code indicates whether field 153 (Classification Number) contains a standard or optional classification number or span in the classification scheme identified in field 084 (Classification Scheme and Edition). A standard classification number or span is from the standard part of the schedules or tables. An optional classification number or span is an officially recognized optional alternative to the standard part of the schedules or tables. A record containing code c (Index term record) in 008/06 (Kind of record) contains code n in this character position.

**Scheme-specific conventions (Dewey Decimal Classification)** - For display purposes, parentheses may be generated around the classification number as a display constant from the information in this character position. Optional numbers are primarily used in the *Dewey Decimal Classification*.

**a - Standard**

Code a indicates that field 153 (Classification Number) contains a single classification or span from the standard part of the schedules or tables of the classification scheme.

008/09 a

084 0b ≠ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ≠ aPR2754.A ≠ cPR2754.Z ≠ hEnglish literature ≠ hEnglish renaissance (1500-1640) ≠ hThe drama ≠ hIndividual authors ≠ hShakespeare, William ≠ hCollected works ≠ hModern editions ≠ j20th century. By editor, publisher, etc., A-Z

008/09 a

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a616.9792 ≠ hTechnology (Applied sciences) ≠ hMedical sciences. Medicine ≠ hDiseases ≠ kSpecific diseases ≠ hOther diseases ≠ hDiseases of the immune system ≠ hImmune deficiency diseases ≠ jAcquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS)

**b - Optional**

Code b indicates that field 153 (Classification Number) contains an officially recognized optional single classification number or span provided by the classification scheme for classifying certain topics. Information about applying optional classification numbers is contained in field 683 (Application Instruction Note).

**008/09 b**084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*

153 bb ‡ a789.8 ‡ hThe arts. Fine and decorative arts ‡ hMusic ‡ hComposers and traditions of music ‡ kOther traditions of music ‡ jWestern art (Classical) music

683 2b ‡ i(Optional number; prefer ‡ a781 ‡ c788)

*[Classification number display: (789.8)]***n - Not applicable**

Code n indicates that the code is not applicable, because the record does not contain a field 153.

008/06 c *[index term record]***008/09 n**

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ bSistema de Clasificación Decimal ‡ c1980 ‡ espa

154 bb ‡ aEl

753 bb ‡ iv.a. la palabra que sigue al artículo en los nombres geográficos que comienzan con el artículo "el"

*[Translation of field 753: see also the word that follows the article in geographic names that begin with the article "el".]***10 - Record update in process**

A one-character alphabetic code indicates whether a change in any field in a record is being considered. Code b alerts users to a potential change in the record and that it may not be advisable to use the number in field 153 (Classification Number) in bibliographic or authority records. The organization investigating the modification may be identified by the National Union Catalog symbol contained in the last subfield ‡ d of field 040 (Record Source). Code b is used for a record being changed after initial completion, and does not indicate completeness of the record. Leader/17 (Encoding level), code o (Incomplete classification record), indicates whether a record is incomplete because it does not yet contain all the fields to make it a complete record.

**a - Record can be used**

Code a indicates that no change in the record is being considered and that the data may be used.

**b - Record is being updated**

Code b indicates that a change in the record is being considered.

**11 - Level of establishment**

A one-character alphabetic code indicates the extent to which the formulation of the 1XX number or term conforms to the classification scheme coded in field 084 (Classification Scheme and Edition).

The codes defined for 008/11 apply only to the 1XX field. The completeness of the entire classification record is indicated in Leader/17 (Encoding level).

**a - Fully established**

Code a indicates that the 1XX field is fully established. It may be used without reservation in a bibliographic or authority record.

**c - Provisional**

Code c indicates that the 1XX field is in a provisional status. This may occur when the classification number has been assigned but not yet published or the 1XX field cannot be formulated satisfactorily because of inadequate information. Further investigation should be made when the number or term is next used in a bibliographic or authority record. When the needed information is available, code c will be changed to a.

**12 - Synthesized number indication**

A one character alphabetic code indicates whether the classification number or span in field 153 (Classification Number) has been derived by the application of add or divide like instructions (including additions from a table) to a classification number or span in the schedules or tables in the classification scheme identified in field 084 (Classification Scheme and Edition). A record containing code c (Index term record) in 008/06 (Kind of record) contains code n in this character position.

**Scheme-specific conventions (Dewey Decimal Classification)** - Non synthesized numbers or spans always appear in the schedules or tables. On the other hand, synthesized numbers have been derived by applying add or divide like instructions, including the general instructions in Table 1 for adding standard subdivisions. Synthesized numbers may appear in published schedules, tables, indexes, manual or in no published source.

**a - Not synthesized**

Code a indicates that the classification number or span in field 153 (Classification Number) is not derived from add or divide like instructions to a classification number or span in the schedules or tables.

008/12    a

084   0b ≠ addc ≠ c21        *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*

153   bb ≠ a616.994 ≠ hTechnology (Applied sciences) ≠ hMedical sciences.  
       Medicine ≠ hDiseases ≠ kSpecific diseases ≠ hOther diseases ≠ hTumors and  
       miscellaneous communicable diseases ≠ jCancers

008/12    a

084   0b ≠ addc ≠ c21        *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*

153   bb ≠ z1 ≠ a071 ≠ hStandard Subdivisions ≠ hEducation, research, related  
       topics ≠ jEducation

**b - Synthesized**

Code b indicates that the classification number or span in field 153 (Classification Number) has been synthesized by applying add or divide like instructions including additions from a table. The components of a synthesized number may be identified in field 765 (Synthesized Number Components).

008/12    b

084   0b ≠ addc ≠ c21        *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*

153   bb ≠ a616.994059 ≠ hTechnology (Applied sciences) ≠ hMedical sciences.  
       Medicine ≠ hDiseases ≠ kSpecific diseases ≠ hOther diseases ≠ hTumors and  
       miscellaneous communicable diseases ≠ jCancers ≠ hPreventive measures and  
       surgery ≠ jSurgery

765   0b ≠ b616.994 ≠ a618.1 ≠ c618.8 ≠ t059



**008/12    b**084   0b ≠ addc ≠ c21        *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*153   bb ≠ z1 ≠ a07101 ≠ c07109 ≠ hStandard Subdivisions ≠ hEducation, research,  
related topics ≠ jEducation ≠ jGeographical treatment

765   0b ≠ z1 ≠ b0710 ≠ z2 ≠ s1 ≠ z1 ≠ u07101

765   0b ≠ z1 ≠ b0710 ≠ z2 ≠ s9 ≠ z1 ≠ u07109

**n - Not applicable**

Code n indicates that the code is not applicable because the record does not contain a field 153.

008/06    c        *[index term record]***008/12    n**084   0b ≠ anlm ≠ c5th ed., rev.        *[National Library of Medicine Classification]*

154   bb ≠ aBibliography

753   bb ≠ iOf subjects represented in NLM's classification, appropriate classification  
number preceded by the letter Z**13 - Display controller**

A one-character alphabetic code indicates whether the classification number in field 153 (Classification Number) appears in the standard schedules or tables or only in an extended display. An extended display includes records created for numbers or terms as index access to the schedules or tables but not enumerated in the schedules or tables itself. It also may include records for classification numbers within defined number spans created by applying a table or other add or divide like instructions. These would normally not appear in the standard schedules. Field 753 (Index Term-Uncontrolled) contains explanatory information that provides index access.

A record with field 154 (General Explanatory Index Term), identified in 008/06 (Kind of record) by code c (Index term record), always contains code b for extended display in this character position.

**a - Displayed in standard schedules or tables**

Code a indicates that the number or term is displayed in the schedules or tables (008/06, Kind of record, code a or b). The number or term may be displayed in the index if field 753 (Index Term-Uncontrolled), is present in the record.

**008/13    a**084   0b ≠ alcc        *[Library of Congress Classification]*153   bb ≠ zP-PZ1 ≠ a131 ≠ hTable for languages (900 nos.) ≠ hGrammar  
≠ hPhonology ≠ jGeneral works**008/13    a**084   0b ≠ addc ≠ c21        *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*153   bb ≠ a581.464 ≠ hNatural sciences and mathematics ≠ kLife sciences ≠ kNatural  
history of specific kinds of organisms ≠ kPlants and animals ≠ hPlants ≠ hSpecific  
topics in natural history of plants ≠ hAdaptation ≠ kAdaptation of specific parts of  
plants ≠ hReproductive adaptation ≠ jFruits



**008/13 a**084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*

153 bb ‡ z1 ‡ a08693 ‡ hStandard Subdivisions ‡ hHistory and description with respect to kinds of persons ‡ hPersons by miscellaneous social characteristics ‡ hPersons with special social status ‡ jNondominant groups

**b - Extended display**

Code b indicates that the record is displayed in an extended display of classification records that includes synthesized numbers not appearing in the standard schedules or tables or general terms that appear only in the index to a classification scheme. Generally numbers in this category are synthesized numbers (008/12 (Synthesized number indication), code b), that have been formulated by applying add or divide like instructions, including the application of a table.

**008/13 b**084 0b ‡ afcps ‡ eeng *[Canadian PS8000 Classification]*

153 bb ‡ aPS8093 ‡ cPS8097 ‡ hCanadian literature ‡ hHistory and criticism of Canadian literature ‡ jRelation of English and French literatures to one another and to other literatures

**008/13 b**084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*

153 bb ‡ a616.994059 ‡ hTechnology (Applied sciences) ‡ hMedical sciences; Medicine ‡ hDiseases ‡ kSpecific diseases ‡ hOther diseases ‡ hTumors and miscellaneous communicable diseases ‡ jCancers ‡ hPreventive measures and surgery ‡ jSurgery

753 bb ‡ aCancer ‡ bsurgery

*[The synthesized classification number appears only in the DDC Relative Index.]***008/13 b**084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*

153 bb ‡ z7 ‡ a0691 ‡ hGroups of Persons ‡ kPersons by various nonoccupational characteristics ‡ hPersons by miscellaneous social characteristics ‡ hPersons with special social status ‡ jAliens

753 bb ‡ aAliens

*[The synthesized classification number appears only in the DDC Relative Index.]***008/13 b**084 0b ‡ anlm ‡ c5th ed., rev. *[National Library of Medicine Classification]*

154 bb ‡ aResearch

753 bb ‡ iForm number 20 or 20.5 in any NLM schedule where applicable

753 bb ‡ iOther fields outside the NLM area, in appropriate LC number

**008/13 b**084 0b ‡ anlm ‡ c5th ed., rev. *[National Library of Medicine Classification]*

153 bb ‡ aQW1 ‡ cQW155 ‡ hMicrobiology and Immunology ‡ jBacteriology

750 02 ‡ aBacteriology

*[The classification number span appears only in the NLM index.]*

# 008

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

**Capitalization** - Alphabetic codes are input in lowercase.

**Field length** - Field 008 should always consist of fourteen (14) character positions.

**System-generated data elements** - 008/00-05 (Date entered on file) is usually system generated. System generation of other 008 data elements depends upon the capabilities of an individual system.

---







**01X-084 Numbers and Codes—General Information**

- 010 Library of Congress Control Number (NR)
- 016 National Bibliographic Agency Control Number (R)
- 035 System Control Number (R)
- 040 Record Source (NR)
- 042 Authentication Code (NR)
- 066 Character Sets Present (NR)
- 084 Classification Scheme and Edition (NR)

---

**DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

Fields 01X-084 contain standard numbers, codes, and other data elements relating to the record.

---



# 010 Library of Congress Control Number (NR)

## First Indicator

Undefined

b Undefined

## Second Indicator

Undefined

b Undefined

## Subfield Codes

+a LC control number (NR)

+8 Field link and sequence number (R)

+z Canceled/invalid LC control number (R)

## FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a unique number assigned to a record by the Library of Congress. The LC control number is carried in field 001 (Control Number) in records distributed by LC's Cataloging Distribution Service. It may also be carried in field 010 +a.

A LC record may contain field 010 with a canceled or invalid control number of a previously-distributed record. A record may be canceled because it is a duplicate and represents the same classification data represented by another record. The structure of the canceled or invalid control number is the same as that used by LC in field 001. Field 010 may or may not contain a subfield +a with the valid control number from the 001 field.

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

### ■ INDICATORS

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (b).

### ■ SUBFIELD CODES

#### +a - LC control number

Subfield +a contains a valid LC control number (see explanation of structure of this number given below).

010 bb+acfb90000001b

#### +z - Canceled/invalid LC control number

Subfield +z contains a canceled or invalid LC control number, including invalid NUCMC numbers.

010 bb+acfb80022124b+zcfb80014241b

#### +8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A.

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

Field 010 is an agency-assigned field; it may be used only for an LC control number.

**Punctuation** - Field 010 does not end in a mark of punctuation.

**Capitalization** - Prefixes are always input as lowercase alphabetic characters.

## STRUCTURE OF THE LC CONTROL NUMBER

The LC control numbering system used with classification records has the same basic structure as that used in control numbers for Library of Congress bibliographic (LCCN structure A), authority, and holdings data records. On January 1, 2001, a structural change will occur (LCCN structure B). The basic control number has been fixed in length at 12 characters and will remain that length. Under LCCN structure B the location of element parts is slightly altered to accommodate a four digit year. Under both structures, the prefix, year, and serial number are the basic elements required to make an LCCN unique.

LCCN Structure A (1978-2000)		
<i>Name of Element</i>	<i>Number of characters</i>	<i>Character position in field</i>
Alphabetic prefix	3	00-02
Year	2	03-04
Serial number	6	05-10

LCCN Structure B (2001- )		
<i>Name of Element</i>	<i>Number of characters</i>	<i>Character position in field</i>
Alphabetic prefix	2	00-01
Year	4	02-05
Serial number	6	06-11

**Alphabetic prefix**

Prefixes are carried in a MARC record as lowercase alphabetic characters and serve to differentiate between different series of LC control numbers. Prefixes are left justified and unused positions contain blanks. If no prefix is present, the prefix portion contains blanks.

010 **bb**≠acfb97051955b  
[LCCN structure A; cf97-51955]

010 **bb**≠acf2001050268  
[LCCN structure B; cf2001-50268]

**Year**

For control numbers assigned under LCCN structure A, the year portion consists of two digits representing the year the control number was assigned. For control numbers assigned under the LCCN structure B beginning with the year 2001, the year portion consists of four digits.

**Serial number**

The serial number portion consists of one to six digits. Serial numbers of less than six digits are right justified and each unused position contains a zero. The hyphen separating the year and the serial number in LC printed products is not carried in the MARC record. For example, the serial number in control number 85-2 is carried as 85000002.



# 016 National Bibliographic Agency Control Number (R)

## First Indicator

National bibliographic agency

**b** National Library of Canada

7 Agency identified in subfield  $\neq 2$

## Second Indicator

Undefined

**b** Undefined

## Subfield Codes

$\neq a$  Record control number (NR)

$\neq z$  Canceled or invalid control number (R)

$\neq 2$  Source (NR)

$\neq 8$  Field link and sequence number (R)

## FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains unique numbers that have been assigned to a record by a national bibliographic agency other than the Library of Congress. (Library of Congress control numbers are recorded in field 010.) The control number may also appear in field 001 (Control Number) in records distributed by the same national agency. An organization using the record may remove the national bibliographic agency control number from field 001 and use field 001 for its own system control number. This number is a record control number used in a national bibliographic agency system, rather than a number used for an entry in a national bibliography.

A record may contain field 016 with a canceled or invalid control number of a previously-distributed record. A record may be canceled because it is a duplicate record for the same classification number.

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

### ■ INDICATORS

#### First Indicator - National bibliographic agency

The first indicator position contains a value that either identifies a specific national bibliographic agency as the source of the control number, or refers to a code subfield  $\neq 2$  (Source).

#### **b** - National Library of Canada

Value **b** indicates that the National Library of Canada is the source of the national bibliographic agency control number.

#### 7 - Source specified in subfield $\neq 2$

Value 7 is used when the source of the control number is indicated by a code in subfield  $\neq 2$ . The source of the code is the *MARC Code List for Organizations* that is maintained by the Library of Congress.

016 7**b** $\neq a$ 94.763966.7 $\neq 2$ <National bibliographic agency identifier>

#### Second Indicator - Undefined

The second indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (**b**).

# 016

## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

### ⌘ a - Record control number

Subfield ⌘ a contains a valid record control number assigned by a national bibliographic agency.

016 7b ⌘ agn0349684n ⌘ 2 <National bibliographic agency identifier>

### ⌘ z - Canceled or invalid control number

Subfield ⌘ z contains a canceled or invalid control number assigned by a national bibliographic agency.

### ⌘ 2 - Source

Subfield ⌘ 2 contains the MARC code or the name of the organization that identifies the national bibliographic agency that was the source of the record control number recorded in field 016. It is used only when the second indicator position contains value 7 (Source specified in subfield ⌘ 2). The source of the MARC code is *MARC Code List for Organizations* that is maintained by the Library of Congress.

016 7b ⌘ aMC967544 ⌘ z0006342114 ⌘ 2 <National bibliographic agency identifier>

### ⌘ 8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A.

---

## CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

016 *National Library of Canada Record Control Number [REDEFINED 1997] [CAN/MARC only]*

Both indicator positions were undefined. The defined subfield codes were ⌘ a (NLC record control number) and ⌘ z (Canceled/invalid NLC control number).

## 035 System Control Number (R)

### First Indicator

Undefined

b Undefined

### Second Indicator

Undefined

b Undefined

### Subfield Codes

+a System control number (NR)

+z Canceled/invalid control number (R)

+6 Linkage (NR)

+8 Field link and sequence number (R)

## FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains the control number for the record in a system other than the one whose number is contained in field 001 (Control Number), field 010 (Library of Congress Control Number), or field 016 (National Bibliographic Agency Control Number). For interchange purposes, documentation of the structure and use of the system control number must be provided to exchange partners by the originating organization. Each valid system control number and any related canceled/invalid control number are contained in a separate 035 field.

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

### ■ INDICATORS

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (b).

### ■ SUBFIELD CODES

#### +a - System control number

Subfield +a contains the MARC code (enclosed in parentheses) of the organization originating the system control number, followed immediately by the number. For U.S. organizations and countries other than Canada, the source of the code is the *MARC Code List for Organizations* that is maintained by the Library of Congress. For Canadian organizations, the source of the code is *Symbols and Interlibrary Loan Policies in Canada* that is maintained by the National Library of Canada.

035 bb+a(CaBVaU)5826213556

#### +z - Canceled/invalid system control number

Subfield +z contains a canceled/invalid system control number that is associated with the valid system control number contained in subfield +a.

035 bb+a(OCOLC)7661149+z(OCOLC)7621149

#### +6 - Linkage

#### +8 - Field link and sequence number

See the description of these subfields in Appendix A.

**INPUT CONVENTIONS**

**Structure** - The structure of the system control number is determined by the documentation provided by the originating system. No space occurs between the parenthetical MARC code and the first character position of the control number. For Canadian organizations, the code is preceded by the letters "Ca".

---



## 040 Record Source (NR)

### First Indicator

Undefined

b Undefined

### Second Indicator

Undefined

b Undefined

### Subfield Codes

+a Original classification agency (NR)

+b Language code (NR)

+c Transcribing agency (NR)

+d Modifying agency (R)

+6 Linkage (NR)

+8 Field link and sequence number (R)

## FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains the MARC code or the name of the organization(s) that created the original record, assigned MARC content designation and transcribed the record into machine-readable form, or modified an existing MARC record. The MARC codes in field 040 specify the responsible parties for the content, content designation, and transcription of a classification data record. For organizations outside of Canada, the source of these codes is *MARC Code List for Organizations* that is maintained by the Library of Congress. For Canadian organizations, the source of the code is *Symbols and Interlibrary Loan Policies in Canada*, that is maintained by the National Library of Canada. If a library chooses to create a record for a classification number which has not been authorized by the particular classification scheme (such as one for a synthesized number), the classification scheme upon which it is based is specified in field 084 (Classification Scheme and Edition), and the library creating the record is identified in field 040.

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

### ■ INDICATORS

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (b).

### ■ SUBFIELD CODES

#### +a - Original cataloging agency

Subfield +a contains the MARC code or the name of the organization that created the original record.

040 bb +aDLC +cDLC

084 0b +alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb +aHT169.6 +hCommunities. Classes. Races +hUrban groups. The city. Urban sociology +hCity planning +hZoning +jGeneral works  
[Cataloging produced and input by the Library of Congress.]

040 **bb**  $\neq$  aIU  $\neq$  cIU

084 **Ob**  $\neq$  addc  $\neq$  c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 **bb**  $\neq$  a362.2923  $\neq$  hSocial sciences  $\neq$  hSocial problems and services;  
 association  $\neq$  kSocial problems and services  $\neq$  kSpecific social problems and services  
 $\neq$  hSocial welfare problems and services  $\neq$  kProblems of and services to persons with  
 illnesses and disabilities  $\neq$  hMental and emotional illnesses and  
 disturbances  $\neq$  kSpecific problems  $\neq$  hSubstance abuse  $\neq$  hAlcohol  $\neq$  jEffects on  
 persons close to those with a problem

[Cataloging produced and input by the University of Illinois.]

#### $\neq$ b - Language of cataloging

Subfield  $\neq$  b contains a MARC code for the language used in the textual portions of the record in the Note fields (6XX). The source of the code is the *MARC Code List for Languages* that is maintained by the Library of Congress.

#### $\neq$ c - Transcribing agency

Subfield  $\neq$  c contains the MARC code or the name of the organization that transcribed the record into machine-readable form. If a transcribing agency also modifies the record in the process of transcribing it, the agency's MARC code or name is also contained in subfield  $\neq$  d.

040 **bb**  $\neq$  aNLM  $\neq$  cNLM

084 **Ob**  $\neq$  alcc

153 **bb**  $\neq$  aSF887  $\neq$  hAnimal culture  $\neq$  hVeterinary medicine  $\neq$  hVeterinary medicine of  
 special organs, regions and systems  $\neq$  hUrinary and reproductive organs  $\neq$  jObstetrics

753 **bb**  $\neq$  aAbortion, Veterinary

[Cataloging produced and input by the National Library of Medicine. It is used by NLM to reference an LCC classification number in its classification index.]

#### $\neq$ d - Modifying agency

Subfield  $\neq$  d contains the MARC code or the name of the organization responsible for modifying a MARC record. A modification is defined as any correction to a record, including data, content designation, or keying changes. The MARC code or name of each organization that modifies a record is contained in a separate subfield  $\neq$  d. Subfield  $\neq$  d is not repeated when the same MARC code or name would occur in **adjacent**  $\neq$  d subfields. If the transcribing agency also modifies the record in the process of transcribing it, the MARC code or agency name is also recorded in subfield  $\neq$  d.

#### $\neq$ 6 - Linkage

#### $\neq$ 8 - Field link and sequence number

See the description of these subfields in Appendix A.

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

For Canadian organizations, the code is preceded by the letters "Ca."

**042 Authentication Code (NR)****First Indicator**

Undefined

b Undefined

**Second Indicator**

Undefined

b Undefined

---

**Subfield Code**

+a Authentication code (R)

---

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field will contain one or more authentication codes assigned by centers that review and upgrade, if necessary, an authority record in a national database. When defined, the authentication codes will be compatible with those used in other cooperative projects.

---





## 066 Character Sets Present (NR)

### First Indicator

Undefined  
 ␣ Undefined

### Second Indicator

Undefined  
 ␣ Undefined

### Subfield Codes

␣a Primary G0 character set (NR)  
 ␣b Primary G1 character set (NR)

␣c Alternate G0 or G1 character set (R)

## FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field is used in records encoded with characters from sets other than ISO 10646 (or Unicode) to specify the character sets for data content that are present in the record. The field alerts users that special processing may be required.

The codes for identifying character sets are all but the first character of the escape sequences that designate the sets (the first character is the *escape character*, hex 1B). The characters that make up the escape sequences, as well as other details about character encoding of MARC records, are described in *MARC 21 Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, and Exchange Media*.

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

### ■ INDICATORS

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (␣).

### ■ SUBFIELD CODES

#### ␣a - Primary G0 character set

Subfield ␣a contains a code identifying the primary character set. The code is the Intermediate and Final characters of the escape sequence that designates and invokes the default G0 character set. Since MARC Latin (including ASCII, MARC Greek, MARC subscript, or MARC superscript) is the MARC default set, if it is the primary set, it does not need to be identified in this subfield.

#### 066 ␣␣␣a(N

*[The Intermediate character in the designation sequence is hex 28 (ASCII graphic "(" opening parenthesis) that identifies the character set as one byte per character and its use as a G0 set, and the Final character is hex 4E (ASCII graphic "N") that identifies the Basic Cyrillic set.]*

#### 066 ␣␣␣a\$1

*[The Intermediate character in the designation sequence is hex 24 (ASCII graphic "\$") that identifies the character set as multiple bytes per character and its use as a G0 set, and the Final character is hex 31 (ASCII graphic "1") that identifies the Chinese, Japanese, Korean character set.]*

**⌘ b - Primary G1 character set**

Subfield ⌘ b contains a code identifying the primary extension character set. The code is composed of the Intermediate and Final characters of the escape sequence that designates and invokes the default G1 character set. Since ANSEL is the MARC default set if it is the primary extended set it does not need to be identified in this subfield.

**066 ⌘⌘⌘ b\$)1**

*[The Intermediate characters in the designation sequence are hex 24 hex 29 (ASCII graphics "\$)") that identify the character set as multiple bytes per character and its use as a G1 set, and the Final character is hex 31 (ASCII graphic "1") that identifies the East Asian character code for bibliographic use (ANSI/NISO Z39.64).]*

**066 ⌘⌘⌘ b)Q**

*[The Intermediate character in the designation sequence is hex 29 (ASCII graphic ")") that identifies the character set as one byte per character and its use as a G1 set, and the Final character is hex 51 (ASCII graphic "Q") that identifies the Extended Cyrillic character set.]*

**⌘ c - Alternate G0 or G1 character set**

Subfield ⌘ c contains a code identifying an alternative character set used as either G0 or G1 sets in the record. The code is the Intermediate and Final characters of each escape sequence that will be used to designate an alternate graphic character set used in the record. The intermediate character(s) indicate whether the set is single or multibyte and whether it will be designated as a G0 or G1 set. The subfield is repeated for each additional character set present.

**066 ⌘⌘⌘ ⌘ c)2**

*[The Intermediate character in the designation sequence is hex 29 (ASCII graphic ")") that identifies the character set as the G1 set and one byte per character, and the Final character is hex 32 (ASCII graphic "2") that identifies the Hebrew character set.]*

---

## 084 Classification Scheme and Edition (NR)

### First Indicator

Type of edition

- 0 Full
- 1 Abridged
- 8 Other

### Second Indicator

Undefined

- b Undefined

### Subfield Codes

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>‡a Classification scheme code (NR)</li> <li>‡b Edition title (NR)</li> <li>‡c Edition identifier (NR)</li> <li>‡d Source edition identifier (NR)</li> <li>‡e Language code (R)</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>‡f Authorization (NR)</li> <li>‡n Variations (R)</li> <li>‡6 Linkage (NR)</li> <li>‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)</li> </ul> |
|--|--|

## FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains information about the authoritative classification scheme and edition that contains the classification number(s) and term(s) in the record. It also may indicate the edition title, date, and language of a particular version of the classification scheme. If a library creates its own record for a classification number maintained by another classification source, the classification scheme on which it is based is specified in field 084 and the library creating the record is identified in field 040 (Record Source).

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

### ■ INDICATORS

#### First Indicator - Type of edition

The first indicator position contains a value that specifies the type of edition containing the classification data.

#### 0 - Full

Value 0 indicates that the classification data is contained in the full edition of the classification scheme. This value is also used for classification schemes not issued in an abridged edition.

**084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21**

**153 bb ‡ a616.9792 ‡ hTechnology (Applied sciences) ‡ hMedical sciences. Medicine ‡ hDiseases ‡ kSpecific diseases ‡ hOther diseases ‡ hDiseases of immune system ‡ hImmune deficiency diseases ‡ jAcquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS)**

**084 0b ‡ alcc**

**153 bb ‡ aN6370 ‡ cN6494 ‡ hVisual arts ‡ hHistory ‡ hModern art ‡ jBy century**

084 0b ≠ afcps

153 bb ≠ aPS8001 ≠ hCanadian literature ≠ hGeneral ≠ jPeriodicals

### 1 - Abridged

Value 1 indicates that the classification data is from an abridged edition of the classification scheme.

084 1b ≠ addc ≠ c13

153 bb ≠ a323.3 ≠ hSocial sciences ≠ hPolitical science (Politics and government) ≠ hCivil and political rights ≠ jCivil and political rights of other social groups

### 8 - Other

Value 8 indicates that the classification data is contained in an edition other than those specified by the other values. The edition is specified in subfield ≠ b (Edition title) or subfield ≠ c (Edition identifier).

084 8b ≠ audc ≠ cInternational medium edition

153 bb ≠ a512.5 ≠ hMathematics and natural sciences ≠ hAlgebra ≠ jGeneral algebra

### Second Indicator - Undefined

The second indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (b).

### ■ SUBFIELD CODES

#### ≠ a - Classification scheme code

Subfield ≠ a contains the variable-length alphabetic MARC code that identifies the classification scheme used to formulate the classification number and caption in field 153 (Classification Number). The code is based on the general classification scheme used without regard to the particular edition or adaptation of the scheme. A classification number or span that has been adapted in some way from the information in the authoritative classification scheme is coded for the scheme in this subfield and the MARC code or name of the library that made the adaptation is contained in field 040 (Record Source). The source of the classification scheme code is *MARC Code List for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions* that is maintained by the Library of Congress.

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21

153 bb ≠ a 323.32 ≠ hSocial sciences ≠ hPolitical science (Politics and government) ≠ hCivil and political rights ≠ hCivil and political rights of other social groups ≠ jGroups identified by miscellaneous social characteristics

084 0b ≠ alcc

153 bb ≠ aHE381 ≠ hTransportation and communications ≠ hWater transportation ≠ hWaterways ≠ jGeneral works

040 bb ≠ aDNLM ≠ cDNLM

084 0b ≠ alcc

153 bb ≠ aSF887 ≠ hAnimal culture ≠ hVeterinary medicine ≠ hVeterinary medicine of special organs, regions, and systems ≠ hUrinary and reproductive organs ≠ jObstetrics

753 bb ≠ aAbortion, Veterinary

*[This record is created by NLM for use in the NLM index to refer users to an LCC number. The basic classification scheme is identified in field 084 and agency that created the record is in field 040 (Record Source).]*



**084 8b** ≠ **audc** ≠ **c**International medium edition

153 **bb** ≠ **a**642.12 ≠ **h**Housekeeping. Home economics. Domestic science ≠ **h**Food. Cooking. Dishes. Meals ≠ **h**Meals and mealtimes. Tableware ≠ **j**Morning meal. Breakfast

#### ≠ **b** - Edition title

Subfield ≠ **b** contains the title of the edition when a MARC code has not been assigned to the scheme or further information needs to be given about the edition.

**084 8b** ≠ **addc** ≠ **b**Sistema de Clasificación Decimal ≠ **c**1980 ≠ **espa**

153 **bb** ≠ **a**331.012 ≠ **h**Ciencias sociales ≠ **h**Economía ≠ **h**Economía laboral ≠ **h**Filosofía y teoría ≠ **j**Satisfacciones del trabajo  
[Data is from the Spanish edition of the Dewey Decimal Classification.]

#### ≠ **c** - Edition identifier

Subfield ≠ **c** contains the edition number, date, or other textual designation of the classification scheme edition contained in the classification record.

**084 0b** ≠ **addc** ≠ **c**21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 **bb** ≠ **a**401.3 ≠ **h**Language ≠ **h**Philosophy and theory ≠ **j**International languages

**084 0b** ≠ **anlm** ≠ **c**5th ed., rev. [National Library of Medicine Classification]

153 **bb** ≠ **a**WQ160 ≠ **h**Obstetrics ≠ **j**Midwifery

#### ≠ **d** - Source edition identifier

Subfield ≠ **d** contains the edition number, date, or other textual designation of the classification scheme edition used as the primary source for the edition identified in subfield ≠ **c**. Subfield ≠ **d** is not used if it would be the same as subfield ≠ **c**. Subfield ≠ **d** contains the edition on which the current edition is based.

**084 8b** ≠ **addc** ≠ **b**Sistema de Clasificación Decimal ≠ **c**20 ≠ **d**21 ≠ **n** contains parts of edition 21 in revised area table for former Soviet Union and Table 6 expansions for North and South American native languages

#### ≠ **e** - Language code

Subfield ≠ **e** contains the MARC code for the language of the classification scheme edition when the language is other than English. The source of the codes is *MARC Code List for Languages* that is maintained by the Library of Congress.

**084 0b** ≠ **afcps** ≠ **e**fre

153 **bb** ≠ **a**FC2033 ≠ **h**Canada ≠ **h**Histoire locale du Canada: provinces, territoires et régions extraprovinciales ≠ **h**Provinces maritimes ≠ **h**Histoire par période ≠ **j**1867-1945

#### ≠ **f** - Authorization

Subfield ≠ **f** contains an indication of whether the translation has been authorized, i.e., done with the approval of the producer of the source edition. If this subfield is not used, it is assumed to be authorized. If desirable, codes may be defined for use in this subfield.

**084 8b** ≠ **addc** ≠ **b**Sistema de Clasificación Decimal ≠ **c**21 ≠ **f**unauthorized

#### ≠ **n** - Variations

Subfield ≠ **n** contains general information about variations in this edition from the primary source edition. Field 686 (Relationship to Source Note) contains specific information about the relationship of a particular number to the source edition.

084 8b ‡ addc ‡ bSistema de Clasificación Decimal ‡ c21 ‡ ncontains parts of edition 21 in revised Table 2 notation for former Soviet Union and Table 6 expansions for North and South American Languages ‡ espa

‡ 6 - Linkage

‡ 8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of these subfields in Appendix A.

---

#### SCHEME-SPECIFIC CONVENTIONS

**Dewey Decimal Classification** - Only the standard abridged edition uses value 1 in the first indicator position.

---







## 1XX Classification Numbers and Terms–General Information

153 Classification Number (NR)

154 General Explanatory Index Term (NR)

---

### DEFINITION AND SCOPE

The Classification Numbers and Terms fields contain either one or more classification numbers from a schedule or table, as identified in 008/06 (Kind of record, code a for schedule or b for table), and associated caption(s), or a general explanatory index term, as identified in 008/06 (Kind of record, code c for index term only). A classification data record must contain one 1XX field, which is constructed according to the classification scheme that is identified in field 084 (Classification Scheme and Edition). Field 153 (Classification Number) is used if the record is an authority for a classification number or span and its associated caption and caption hierarchy. Field 154 (General Explanatory Index Term) is used if the index term cannot be accommodated in one of the 70X-75X Index Term Fields in a schedule or table record because it does not have an associated classification number.

---

### GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Guidelines for applying content designators for field 153 are provided in the *X53 Classification Numbers–General Information* section. Guidelines for applying content designators for field 154 are provided in that field.

---



## X53 Classification Numbers—General Information

**153** Classification Number (NR)

**453** Invalid Number Tracing (R)

**553** Valid Number Tracing (R)

### First Indicator

**153** Undefined

**b** Undefined

### Second Indicator

Undefined

**b** Undefined

**453, 553** Source of classification number

**0** Schedule

**1** Table

### Subfield Codes

#### *Name portion*

**≠a** Classification number—single number or beginning number of span (R)

**≠c** Classification number—ending number of span (R)

**≠z** Table identification (NR)

#### *Caption portion*

**≠h** Caption hierarchy (R)

**≠j** Caption (NR)

**≠k** Summary number span caption hierarchy (R)

#### *Tracing and control subfields*

**≠i** Reference instruction phrase  
[453/553] (NR)

**≠t** Topic [453/553] (NR)

**≠w** Control subfield [453/553] (NR)

**≠6** Linkage (NR)

**≠8** Field link and sequence number (R)

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

The content designators identify the subelements occurring in classification numbers that are constructed according to the classification scheme that is identified in field 084 (Classification Scheme and Edition). These fields may contain a single classification number (008/07, Type of number, code a) or a span of classification numbers (008/07, code b or c) from a schedule (008/06, Kind of record, code a) or from a table (008/06, code b) and its associated caption (subfield ≠j) and caption hierarchy (subfields ≠h and ≠k). The subject context of the classification number is indicated by the preceding hierarchy captions contained in repeatable subfields ≠h and ≠k. (Fields 153, 453, and 553 must contain at least one subfield ≠a and one subfield ≠j.)

### ■ INDICATORS

#### First Indicator - Undefined [153]

The first indicator in field 153 is undefined and contains a blank (b).

**First Indicator - Source of classification number [453/553]**

The first indicator position in field 453 and 553 contains a value that specifies whether the classification number is from a schedule or a table. It facilitates in sorting the tracing into the correct source.

**0 - Schedule**

Value 0 indicates that the classification number is from a schedule. A number which is synthesized by using add instructions is considered a schedule number.

084 0b ≠ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ≠ aKK1261 ≠ cKK1261.5 ≠ hLaw of Germany and West Germany ≠ hCivil law.  
Bürgerliches Recht ≠ hProperty. Law of things. Sachenrecht ≠ jRight of property.  
Constitutional guaranty

453 0b ≠ wj ≠ aKK1275 ≠ hLaw of Germany and West Germany ≠ hCivil Law.  
Bürgerliches Recht ≠ hProperty. Law of things. Sachenrecht ≠ jOwnership.  
Eigentum ≠ jRight of ownership

**1 - Table**

Value 1 indicates that the classification number is from a table. The table is identified in subfield ≠ z (Table identification).

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ z1 ≠ a 0715 ≠ hStandard Subdivisions ≠ hEducation, research, related topics ≠ h  
Education ≠ kSpecific levels of education ≠ jAdult education and on-the-job training

453 1b ≠ wahna ≠ z1 ≠ a07152 ≠ c07154 ≠ hStandard Subdivisions ≠ hEducation,  
research, related topics ≠ hEducation ≠ kSpecific levels of education ≠ hAdult  
education and on-the-job training ≠ jInstitutes and workshops, radio and television  
classes, correspondence courses

**Second Indicator - Undefined**

The second indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (b).

**■ SUBFIELD CODES****≠ a - Classification number—single number or beginning number of span**

Subfield ≠ a contains either a single classification number or the beginning number of a classification number span.

084 0b ≠ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ≠ aPQ4315.25 ≠ hItalian literature ≠ hIndividual authors. ≠ hIndividual authors and  
works to 1400. ≠ hDante Alighieri, 1265-1321. ≠ hTranslations ≠ hEnglish. ≠ hDivina  
commedia. ≠ hInferno. ≠ jParticular cantos

084 0b ≠ afcps [Canadian FC Classification]

153 bb ≠ aFC2601 ≠ cFC2650 ≠ hCanada ≠ hCanadian Local History. Provinces, territories  
and extra-provincial regions ≠ jPrince Edward Island

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a786.67 ≠ hThe arts. Fine and decorative arts ≠ hMusic ≠ kPrinciples, forms,  
ensembles, voices, instruments ≠ kEnsembles, voices, instruments ≠ kInstruments and  
their music ≠ kSpecific instruments and their music ≠ hKeyboard, mechanical,  
electroponic, percussion instruments ≠ hMechanical and aeolian instruments ≠ k  
Mechanical instruments ≠ jMechanical stringed instruments



084 0b ⊢ addc ⊢ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ⊢ a133.323 ⊢ hPhilosophy, paranormal phenomena, psychology ⊢ hParanormal phenomena ⊢ hParapsychology and occultism ⊢ hDivinatory arts ⊢ hFortune-telling by crystals and stones; dowsing; fortune-telling by cards, tea leaves and coffee grounds, oracles and sibyls ⊢ jDowsing

453 0b ⊢ wahna ⊢ a133.3239 ⊢ hPhilosophy, paranormal phenomena, psychology ⊢ hParanormal phenomena ⊢ hParapsychology and occultism ⊢ hDivinatory arts ⊢ hFortune-telling by crystals and stones; dowsing; fortune-telling by cards, tea leaves and coffee grounds, oracles and sibyls ⊢ hDowsing ⊢ jTelediesthesia (Distant prospection)

#### ⊢ c - Classification number–ending number of span

Subfield ⊢ c contains the ending number of a classification number span.

084 0b ⊢ addc ⊢ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ⊢ a153.94001 ⊢ c153.94999 ⊢ hPhilosophy, paranormal phenomena, psychology ⊢ hPsychology ⊢ kSpecific topics in psychology ⊢ hConscious mental processes and intelligence ⊢ hIntelligence and aptitudes ⊢ hAptitude tests ⊢ jTests for aptitudes in specific fields

084 0b ⊢ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ⊢ aBL1112.2 ⊢ cBL1137.72 ⊢ hReligions. Mythology. Rationalism ⊢ hReligion ⊢ hHistory and principles of religions ⊢ hAsian. Oriental ⊢ hBy religion ⊢ hHinduism ⊢ hSacred books. Sources ⊢ jVedic texts

453 0b ⊢ wanna ⊢ aPK3000 ⊢ cPK3581 ⊢ hIndo-Iranian philology and literature ⊢ jVedic literature

#### ⊢ h - Caption hierarchy

Subfield ⊢ h contains a caption for each higher level of the caption hierarchy that precedes the caption for a classification number or span that is contained in subfield ⊢ j (Caption). The caption at the highest level is recorded in the first subfield ⊢ h. The caption at each successive level is recorded in sequence in separate subfields ⊢ h up to and including the level that precedes the caption contained in subfield ⊢ j. Captions for all levels of the hierarchy are recorded in the field. If the caption in subfield ⊢ j is the highest level of the hierarchy, subfield ⊢ h is not used. (However, some systems may wish to omit some levels of the hierarchy for display purposes.) A caption hierarchy for classification numbers in a summary number span in the *Dewey Decimal Classification* is contained in subfield ⊢ k (Summary number span caption hierarchy).

084 0b ⊢ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ⊢ aQL638.E55 ⊢ hZoology ⊢ hChordates. Vertebrates ⊢ hFishes ⊢ hSystematic divisions ⊢ hOsteichthys (Bony fishes). By family, A-Z ⊢ hFamilies ⊢ jEngraulidae (Anchovies)

084 0b ⊢ addc ⊢ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ⊢ a306.36 ⊢ hSocial sciences ⊢ kSpecific topics in sociology and anthropology ⊢ hCulture and institutions ⊢ hEconomic institutions ⊢ jSystems of labor

553 0b ⊢ wl ⊢ a331 ⊢ hSocial sciences ⊢ hEconomics ⊢ kEconomics of labor, finance, land, energy ⊢ jLabor economics ⊢ tsociology of labor

#### ⊢ i - Reference instruction phrase [453/553]

Subfield ⊢ i contains the reference instruction phrase for a tracing that cannot be system generated from the codes defined for subfield ⊢ w (Control subfield). Subfield ⊢ i is appropriate



only in field 453 (Invalid Number Tracing) and field 553 (Valid Number Tracing). Guidelines for applying subfield  $\neq i$  are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields-General Information* section.

### $\neq j$ - Caption

Subfield  $\neq j$  contains the lowest caption in the caption hierarchy for a classification number or span.

084 0 $\neq b$   $\neq$  alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153  $\neq b$   $\neq$  aKK253  $\neq$  cKK1803  $\neq$  hLaw of Germany and West Germany  $\neq$  hHistory of law. Rechts- und Verfassungsgeschichte  $\neq$  hBy period  $\neq$  hPeriod from ca. 919 to ca. 1867. Hochmittelalter, Spätmittelalter und Neuzeit  $\neq$  hSources. Rechtsquellen  $\neq$  hImperial laws and legislation. Reichsabschiede  $\neq$  hIndividual. By date  $\neq$  jRatisbon (Franz II. Reichsdeputationshauptschluss)

084 0 $\neq b$   $\neq$  addc  $\neq$  c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153  $\neq b$   $\neq$  a600  $\neq$  jTechnology (Applied sciences)

### $\neq k$ - Summary number span caption hierarchy

Subfield  $\neq k$  contains the caption at a level higher than the last for a summary number span when the classification scheme identified in field 084 (Classification Scheme and Edition) is the *Dewey Decimal Classification*. Caption hierarchies for single classification numbers, defined numbers spans, or other types of summary number spans are contained in subfield  $\neq h$ . The last caption in the caption hierarchy for a summary number span in field 153 (008/07, Type of number, code c for summary number span) is recorded in subfield  $\neq j$ .

084 0 $\neq b$   $\neq$  addc  $\neq$  c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153  $\neq b$   $\neq$  a220.12  $\neq$  hReligion  $\neq$  hBible  $\neq$  kGeneralities  $\neq$  hOrigins and authenticity  $\neq$  jCanon

084 0 $\neq b$   $\neq$  addc  $\neq$  c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153  $\neq b$   $\neq$  a617.9  $\neq$  hTechnology (Applied sciences)  $\neq$  hMedical sciences. Medicine  $\neq$  hMiscellaneous branches of medicine. Surgery  $\neq$  jOperative surgery and special fields of surgery

453 0 $\neq b$   $\neq$  wanna  $\neq$  a617.307  $\neq$  hTechnology (Applied sciences)  $\neq$  hMedical sciences. Medicine  $\neq$  hMiscellaneous branches of medicine. Surgery  $\neq$  kSurgery  $\neq$  hOrthopedics  $\neq$  j Orthopedic appliances

### $\neq t$ - Topic [453/553]

Subfield  $\neq t$  contains the topic to which the tracing applies. Subfield  $\neq t$  is appropriate only in field 453 (Invalid Number Tracing) and field 553 (Valid Number Tracing). Guidelines for applying subfield  $\neq t$  are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields-General Information* section.

### $\neq w$ - Control subfield [453/553]

Subfield  $\neq w$  contains up to four character positions (designated as  $\neq w/0$ ,  $\neq w/1$ , etc.) that indicate whether special instructions apply to the display of the 453 or 553 tracing, whether the reference should be displayed, and whether a field 685 (History Note) is associated with the tracing. Subfield  $\neq w$  is appropriate only in field 453 (Invalid Number Tracing) and field 553 (Valid Number Tracing) fields. Guidelines for applying the codes defined for subfield  $\neq w$  are provided in the *Tracing and Reference Fields-General Information* section.

### $\neq z$ - Table identification

Subfield  $\neq z$  contains the identification of the table to which the classification number belongs. The identification of the table by which a classification number or span is further subarranged

is contained in field 762 (Table Identification). Subfield  $\neq$  z is not repeatable; it is input before the first element of the classification number in the first subfield  $\neq$  a.

084 0b  $\neq$  alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb  $\neq$  zN1  $\neq$  a49.6  $\neq$  hTables of regions or countries (100 numbers)  $\neq$  hEurope  $\neq$  jGerman, Austrian, and Swiss (Collectively)

453 1b  $\neq$  wj  $\neq$  zN1  $\neq$  a47.82  $\neq$  hTables of regions or countries (100 numbers)  $\neq$  hEurope  $\neq$  jAustrian, German, and Swiss

084 0b  $\neq$  addc  $\neq$  c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb  $\neq$  z2  $\neq$  a482  $\neq$  c484  $\neq$  hGeographic Areas, Historical Periods, Persons  $\neq$  kSpecific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds  $\neq$  kThe modern world; extraterrestrial worlds  $\neq$  hEurope. Western Europe  $\neq$  hScandinavia  $\neq$  jDivisions of Norway

553 1b  $\neq$  wjg  $\neq$  z2  $\neq$  a481  $\neq$  hGeographic Areas, Historical Periods, Persons  $\neq$  kSpecific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds  $\neq$  kThe modern world; extraterrestrial worlds  $\neq$  hEurope. Western Europe  $\neq$  hScandinavia  $\neq$  jNorway  $\neq$  tdivisions of Norway

$\neq$  6 - Linkage

$\neq$  8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of these subfields in Appendix A.

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

**Order of Subfields** - The caption hierarchy (in subfields  $\neq$  h and  $\neq$  k) and caption (in subfield  $\neq$  j) follow the classification number(s) or number span. A table number in field 153 (Classification Number) is identified in 008/06 (Kind of record), code b and in field 453/553 (Invalid or Valid Number Tracing) is identified by the first indicator, value 1 (Source of classification number). For table numbers, subfield  $\neq$  z is the first subfield(s).

**Invalid Classification Numbers** - The punctuation (for LCC, parentheses; for DDC, brackets) indicating that the number is invalid is not input as data. For display purposes, punctuation may be generated around the number to designate that it is invalid, or in cases where one number of the span is invalid around the portion which is invalid. For a classification number in field 153 (Classification Number), the information about its validity is included in 008/08 (Classification validity). For a classification number in field 453 or 553, the punctuation indicating invalidity may be generated on the basis of the tag.

**Number Spans** - The beginning and ending numbers of a number span are usually separated by a hyphen in a display. This hyphen may be generated as a display constant preceding subfield  $\neq$  c.

**Display of Classification Numbers and Captions** - Conventions for the display of classification numbers and captions as they appear in the published schedules are considered local information and are not treated in this format.

## SCHEME-SPECIFIC CONVENTIONS

## Library of Congress Classification

**Classification Number Elements** - In recording a span of classification numbers, the beginning number of the span is recorded in a single subfield  $\neq$  a, followed by the ending number of the span recorded in subfield  $\neq$  c. Note that all elements of the ending number of the span are to be recorded, even if they duplicate elements recorded for the beginning number of the span. In field 453 (Invalid Number Tracing) the classification number in subfield  $\neq$  a is an invalid number assigned to ensure appropriate placement. (Frequently .2 is added to the previous classification number used.) In field 553 (Valid Number Tracing) the classification number in subfield  $\neq$  a (and subfield  $\neq$  c if appropriate) is the same as the classification number under which the reference is made.

153 **bb**  $\neq$  aR126.A  $\neq$  cR126.Z  $\neq$  hMedicine (General)  $\neq$  hGeneral works  $\neq$  hThrough 1800  $\neq$  jAncient Greek

453 **Ob**  $\neq$  wj  $\neq$  aR134.82  $\neq$  hMedicine (General)  $\neq$  hHistory  $\neq$  hBy period  $\neq$  hAncient  $\neq$  jBiography  
*[The previous classification number in the hierarchy is R134.8 (Paleopathology)]*

153 **bb**  $\neq$  aF1404  $\neq$  cF1405.9  $\neq$  hLatin America. Spanish America  $\neq$  hLatin America (General)  $\neq$  hCongresses  $\neq$  jPan American conferences

553 **Ob**  $\neq$  wj  $\neq$  aE11  $\neq$  hAmerica  $\neq$  hGeneral  $\neq$  jPeriodicals. Societies. Collections (serial)  $\neq$  tinternational American Conferences  
*[The see also tracing appears under the caption for E11 (Periodicals. Societies. Collections (serial)): For international American conferences see F1404-F1405.9.]*

**Punctuation** - Decimal points used to separate digit portions of a classification number are recorded as they appear. Generally, punctuation (commas, periods, dashes, etc.) occurring within the caption are included in recording the caption in both subfields  $\neq$  h (Caption hierarchy) and  $\neq$  j (Caption), except for a period following the data in  $\neq$  j. A blank is encoded before additional elements that are not simple numeric or alphanumeric elements, such as a date or ordinal number.

**Internal table identification** - If the table is an internal subarrangement coded as an external table, subfield  $\neq$  z contains the first classification number under which the subarrangement should appear followed by /1 if only one subarrangement, /2, /3, etc. for multiple subarrangements. Full instructions are given under Scheme Specific Conventions in field 763 (Internal Subarrangement or Add Table Entry).

## Dewey Decimal Classification

**Classification Number Elements** - *Dewey Decimal Classification* numbers are contained in a single subfield  $\neq$  a.

**Optional Classification Numbers** - An optional classification number is designated for display purposes by enclosing the whole number in parentheses. It is not necessary to include the parentheses as part of the data in the field. The information is included in 008/09 (Standard or optional designation).

**Summary Number Span Caption Hierarchy** - A summary number span caption hierarchy (subfield  $\neq$  k) is the caption hierarchy for what *DDC* calls *centered entries*. Subfield  $\neq$  k is used by the *DDC* to identify captions appearing as *centered entries*.

**Table Numbers** - *Dewey Decimal Classification* table numbers may use the letter "T" followed by two dashes before the table number. The "T" and the two dashes may be generated as a display constant for subfield  $\neq$  z (e.g.,  $\neq$  z2  $\neq$  a72982 may be displayed as T2--72982).



## 153 Classification Number (NR)

### First Indicator

Undefined

b Undefined

### Second Indicator

Undefined

b Undefined

### Subfield Codes

- |    |   |    |   |
|----|---|----|---|
| ≠a | Classification number-single number or beginning number of span (R) | ≠k | Summary number span caption hierarchy (R) |
| ≠c | Classification number-ending number of span (R)                     | ≠z | Table identification (NR)                 |
| ≠h | Caption hierarchy (R)   | ≠6 | Linkage (NR)                              |
| ≠j | Caption (NR)  | ≠8 | Field link and sequence number (R)        |

## FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a single classification number or span from a schedule or number(s) from a table and its associated caption and caption hierarchy.

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Guidelines for applying the content designators defined for field 153, scheme-specific conventions, and input conventions are given in the *X53 Classification Numbers-General Information* section.

### ■ EXAMPLES

084 0b ≠ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]  
 153 bb ≠ aF61 ≠ cF75 ≠ hUnited States local history ≠ jMassachusetts

084 0b ≠ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]  
 153 bb ≠ zL4 ≠ a1 ≠ hTable of subdivisions: Institutions in America (LD-LE) ≠ hAdministration ≠ hGeneral works. Office reports ≠ jBoard of regents, trustees, etc.

084 0b ≠ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]  
 153 bb ≠ zP-PZ2 ≠ a269 ≠ hTable for languages (500 nos.) ≠ hTranslating ≠ jMachine translating

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb ≠ z6 ≠ a94511 ≠ hLanguages ≠ hOther languages ≠ hAltaic, Uralic, Hyperborean, Dravidian languages ≠ kUralic languages ≠ hFinno-Ugric languages ≠ hUgric languages ≠ jHungarian (Magyar)

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb ≠ a401.3 ≠ hLanguage ≠ hPhilosophy and theory ≠ jInternational languages



084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21      *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*  
153 bb ‡ a220.1 ‡ c220.9 ‡ hReligion ‡ hBible ‡ jGeneralities

---

## 154 General Explanatory Index Term (NR)

### First Indicator

Undefined

b Undefined

### Second Indicator

Undefined

b Undefined

### Subfield Codes

⊕ a General explanatory index term (NR)

⊕ b General explanatory index  
term-succeeding level (R)

⊕ f Schedule identification (R)

⊕ 6 Linkage (NR)

⊕ 8 Field link and sequence number (R)

## FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a general explanatory term from the index to the classification scheme that is identified in field 084 (Classification Scheme and Edition). Field 154 is appropriate only in an index term record (008/06, Kind of record, code c) that is created because the index term cannot be accommodated in a 70X-75X Index Term field in a schedule or table record (008/06, code a or b) that contains a classification number in field 153 (Classification Number). This occurs when the index term is not associated with one classification number or span. Field 753 (Index Term-Uncontrolled) is always used in a record containing field 154 to direct the user to different locations within the classification scheme for classifying the topic.

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

### ■ INDICATORS

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (b).

### ■ SUBFIELD CODES

#### ⊕ a - General explanatory index term

Subfield ⊕ a contains a general explanatory index term representing a general concept that may be found in numerous places in the classification scheme identified in field 084 (Classification Scheme and Edition).

008/06 c [index term record]

084 0b ⊕ anlm ⊕ c5th ed., rev. [National Library of Medicine Classification]

154 bb ⊕ aResearch

753 bb ⊕ i(Form number 20 or 20.5 in any NLM schedule where applicable)

753 bb ⊕ iOther fields outside the NLM area, in appropriate LC number

008/06 c [index term record]

084 0b ⊕ anlm ⊕ c5th ed., rev. [National Library of Medicine Classification]

154 bb ⊕ aFollow-up studies

753 bb ⊕ i(Form number 20 in any NLM schedule where applicable)

753 bb ⊕ iIn a particular area, with the subject of the original study, e.g. Heart Diseases, ⊕ eWG210

008/06 c *[index term record]*

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ bSistema de Clasificación Decimal ‡ c1980 ‡ espa

154 bb ‡ aEl

753 bb ‡ iv.a. la palabra que sigue al artículo en los nombres geográficos que comienzan con el artículo "el"

*[Translation of 753: see also the word that follows the article in geographic names that begin with the article "el"]*

‡ b - **General explanatory index term—succeeding level**

Subfield ‡ b contains a term at a level after the first in a general explanatory index term.

008/06 c *[index term record]*

084 0b ‡ alcc *[Library of Congress Classification]*

154 bb ‡ aAdministration ‡ bOrganization ‡ fKJ-KKZ

753 bb ‡ uOrganization and administration

‡ f - **Schedule identification**

Subfield ‡ f contains the identification of the schedule or subclass to which the general explanatory index term is related.

008/06 c *[index term record]*

084 0b ‡ alcc *[Library of Congress Classification]*

154 bb ‡ aCivil wars ‡ fE-F

753 bb ‡ uMilitary history under individual countries

‡ 6 - **Linkage**

‡ 8 - **Field link and sequence number**

See the description of these subfields in Appendix A.

---







## Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information

### Reference fields

- 253 Complex See Reference (R)**  
**353 Complex See Also Reference (R)**

### Tracing fields

- 453 Invalid Number Tracing (R)**  
**553 Valid Number Tracing (R)**  
 ‡i Reference instruction phrase (NR)  
 ‡t Topic (NR)  
 ‡w Control subfield (NR)  
     /0 Special relationship  
     /1 Hierarchical relationship  
     /2 Reference display  
     /3 History Reference

## DEFINITION AND SCOPE

A cross reference is used to refer between classification numbers that are constructed according to the classification scheme that is identified in field 084 (Classification Scheme and Edition). It leads from an invalid classification number to a valid classification number or from one valid classification number to another valid classification number. Tracings or reference note fields are used to direct the user to another classification number, often for specific aspects of a topic. Cross reference displays may be generated by combining the contents of a tracing or a reference note field and field 153 (Classification Number) of a record. In some cases the inputting library may provide both a tracing and a reference note field and choose to suppress the tracing for display purposes.

## ■ TRACING FIELDS

Tracing fields lead directly from one number to another number. A 453 Invalid Number Tracing field leads from an invalid number to a valid number. A 553 Valid Number Tracing field leads from one valid classification number to another, often for classification of certain topics. Cross reference displays generated from the tracing fields are called *simple cross references*. In a simple cross reference display, the content of the 453 or 553 field is the *number referred from*, and, following a reference instruction phrase, the content of the 153 field is the *number referred to*. In the tracing fields, the reference instruction phrase is associated with a code in subfield ‡w/0 (Special relationship) and/or subfield ‡w/1 (Hierarchical relationship). In unusual cases the reference instruction phrase may be carried explicitly in subfield ‡i (Reference instruction phrase).

084 0b ‡alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ‡aHD1330 ‡cHD1331 ‡hIndustries. Land use. Labor ‡hLand use ‡hLand tenure ‡jLandlord and peasant

453 00 ‡wj ‡aHD1501.2 ‡hIndustries. Land use. Labor ‡hAgricultural economics ‡jLandlord

[An invalid classification number in field 453 leads the user to the valid classification number span in field 153.]

## Tracing and Reference Fields

### *Cross reference display example:*

Industries. Land use. Labor

Agricultural economics

Landlord see HD1330-HD1331

*[Note: the invalid number in 453 ≠ a may be suppressed for display]*

### ■ REFERENCE NOTE FIELDS

Reference note fields lead from one classification number to one or more other classification numbers. A reference note field is used when more complex reference instruction is needed than can be conveyed by one or more simple cross references generated from 453 and/or 553 tracing fields. There are two types of reference note fields: 1) see references (field 253), which refer to a classification number in another record and 2) see also references, which guide the user to related topics in other valid classification numbers (field 353).

Cross reference displays constructed from the reference note fields are *complex cross references*. In a complex cross reference display, the content of the 153 field of a record is the *number referred from*, and, following a reference instruction phrase, the reference note field contains the *number(s) referred to*. In the reference note fields, the reference instruction is given as explicit text in subfield ≠ i (Explanatory text).

008/06      b      *[table number]*

084   0b ≠ addc ≠ c21      *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*

153   bb ≠ a621.47 ≠ hTechnology (Applied sciences) ≠ hEngineering and allied operations ≠ h  
Applied physics ≠ hHeat engineering and prime movers ≠ jSolar-energy engineering

253   2b ≠ i Class engineering of secondary sources of solar energy with the secondary  
source, e.g., generation of electricity from solar radiation ≠ a621.31244, ≠ iwind energy  
≠ a621.45

*[Reference instruction phrase is explicit in 253 subfield ≠ i]*

### *Cross reference display example at 621.47*

621.47      Solar-energy engineering

Class engineering of secondary sources of solar energy with  
the secondary source, e.g., generation of electricity from solar  
radiation 621.31244, wind energy 621.45

---

### GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Guidelines for applying subfield ≠ i (Reference instruction phrase), subfield ≠ t (Topic) and subfield ≠ w (Control subfield) in the 453 and 553 fields and examples of simple cross reference displays are provided in this section. Guidelines for applying the content designators for the classification number and caption portions of the 453 and 553 tracing fields are provided in the *X53 Classification Numbers –General Information* section.

Guidelines for applying the content designators and examples of complex cross reference displays for fields 253 and 353 are provided in the individual field descriptions.

### ■ TRACING FIELDS-SIMPLE CROSS REFERENCES

Simple cross references are generated for display from tracing fields. Displays may vary from one system to the next; those shown below are only suggestions. The content of subfield ≠ i and subfield ≠ w determine the reference instruction phrase used with the tracing. The character positions defined

for subfield  $\neq w$  are described here. Subfield  $\neq t$  (Topic) provides additional information about the use of the classification number.

## $\neq i$ - Reference instruction phrase

Subfield  $\neq i$  contains a special reference instruction phrase that may be used in a cross reference display when the generation of a reference instruction phrase based on a code in control subfield  $\neq w/0$  is not possible. When a tracing field contains subfield  $\neq i$ , subfield  $\neq w/0$  contains code  $i$  (Reference instruction phrase in subfield  $\neq i$ ).

## $\neq t$ - Topic

Subfield  $\neq t$  specifies the topics for which the tracing is appropriate. If the topic is the same as the caption in field 153 (Classification Number), subfield  $\neq j$  (Caption), the topic need not be repeated in subfield  $\neq t$ . However, if the topic is the same as the caption of the number referred to in subfield  $\neq j$  of field 453 or 553, the topic is still contained in subfield  $\neq t$  to facilitate a display of the tracing.

084 0 $\neq$  alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153  $\neq$  aTT898.2  $\neq$  hHandicrafts. Arts and crafts  $\neq$  hHome arts.

Homecrafts  $\neq$  hDecorative crafts  $\neq$  hFancy articles  $\neq$  jMerry-go-round art

553 0 $\neq$  w $\neq$  aNK5030  $\neq$  cNK5035  $\neq$  hDecorative arts. Applied arts. Decoration and ornament  $\neq$  hOther arts and art industries  $\neq$  jFairground art  $\neq$  tHandicraft of carousel horses

*Cross reference display example at NK5030-NK5035:*

Decorative arts. Applied arts. Decoration and ornament

Other arts and industries

Fairground art

Cf. TT898.2, Handicraft of carousel horses

084 0 $\neq$  addc  $\neq$  c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153  $\neq$  a546.8  $\neq$  hNatural sciences and mathematics  $\neq$  hChemistry and allied sciences  $\neq$  kChemistry  $\neq$  hInorganic chemistry  $\neq$  jPeriodic table

553 0 $\neq$  wk  $\neq$  a 541.24  $\neq$  hNatural sciences and mathematics  $\neq$  hChemistry and allied sciences  $\neq$  kChemistry  $\neq$  kGeneral topics in chemistry  $\neq$  hPhysical and theoretical chemistry  $\neq$  hTheoretical chemistry  $\neq$  jAtomic structure  $\neq$  tperiodic table

*Cross reference display example at 541.24:*

541.24 Atomic structure

Class periodic table in 546.8

## $\neq w$ - Control subfield

Subfield  $\neq w$  contains up to four character positions (designated as  $\neq w/0$ ,  $\neq w/1$ ,  $\neq w/2$ , and  $\neq w/3$ ) that indicate whether special instructions apply to the display of the 453 or 553 classification number, whether the reference should be displayed, and whether a field 685 (History Note) is associated with the tracing. Because the definitions of the codes in subfield  $\neq w$  are dependent on the character position in which they occur, the coding of any character position mandates that each preceding character position contains a code or fill character (|); succeeding character positions need not be used. For example, if subfield  $\neq w/1$  (Hierarchical relationship) is not applicable, but  $\neq w/3$  (History reference) is, subfield  $\neq w/1$  must contain code n (Not applicable), and subfield  $\neq w/2$  must contain either a code or a fill character. If  $\neq w/1$ ,  $\neq w/2$ , and  $\neq w/3$  are not applicable, only  $\neq w/0$  need be coded.



## Tracing and Reference Fields

### ≠ w/0 - Special relationship

Subfield ≠ w/0 contains a one-character alphabetic code that describes a relationship between the classification numbers contained in field 153 and fields 453 or 553. The codes may be used to generate a special reference instruction phrase in a cross reference display. If more than one code is applicable, the field may be repeated and the generation of a display of one of the tracings may be suppressed by code a (Reference not displayed) in subfield ≠ w/2 (Reference display).

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>a</b> - Previous classification number         | <b>k</b> - Class elsewhere reference                     |
| <b>b</b> - New classification number              | <b>l</b> - See also reference                            |
| <b>i</b> - Reference instruction phrase<br>in ≠ i | <b>m</b> - Standard subdivisions do-not-use<br>reference |
| <b>j</b> - See reference                          | <b>n</b> - Not applicable                                |

#### **a** - Previous classification number

Code a indicates that the classification number in the tracing field is a number previously used for the subject. It directs the user to the currently used number in field 153 (Classification Number). The code may be used to generate a special reference instruction phrase such as *see also under the new number:* in a cross reference display. Field 685 (History Note) may be included in the record to give additional information about the history of the classification number contained in the tracing.

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a133.323 ≠ hPhilosophy, paranormal phenomena, psychology ≠ h  
Paranormal phenomena ≠ hParapsychology and occultism ≠ hDivinatory arts  
≠ hFortune-telling by crystals and stones; dowsing; fortune-telling by cards,  
tea leaves and coffee grounds, oracles and sibyls ≠ jDowsing

453 0b ≠ wahna ≠ a133.3239 ≠ hPhilosophy, paranormal phenomena, psychology  
≠ hParanormal phenomena ≠ hParapsychology and occultism ≠ hDivinatory  
arts ≠ hFortune-telling by crystals and stones; dowsing; fortune-telling by  
cards, tea leaves and coffee grounds, oracles and sibyls ≠ hDowsing ≠ j  
Telediesthesia (Distant prospection)

685 12 ≠ iNumber discontinued; class in ≠ a133.323 ≠ d19960930 ≠ 221

*Cross reference display example under 133.3239:*

[133.3239] Telediesthesia (Distant prospection)

Number discontinued; class in 133.323

[Brackets may be generated around the invalid number on the basis of the field 453 tag].

#### **b** - New classification number

Code b indicates that the number in the tracing field entirely supersedes the number contained in field 153. The code may be used to generate a special reference instruction phrase such as *see also under the previous number:* in a cross reference display. If the meaning of the number in field 153 is changed only for *certain subjects*, this complex information is conveyed in field 685 (History Note). This type of reference might be used by a library that assigns new classification numbers to new books but does not reclassify existing ones when a new edition is published.

## Tracing and Reference Fields

- 084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c19 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
153 bb ≠ a787.1 ≠ hThe arts. Fine and decorative arts ≠ hMusic ≠ kIndividual mediums of musical expression ≠ kInstruments and instrumental music ≠ kSpecific instruments and their music ≠ kOther instruments and their music ≠ hString instruments and their music ≠ kSpecific bowed instruments and their music ≠ jViolin  
553 0b ≠ wbnna ≠ a787.2 ≠ hThe arts. Fine and decorative arts ≠ hMusic ≠ kInstruments and their music ≠ kSpecific instruments and their music ≠ hStringed instruments (Chordophones). Bowed string instruments ≠ jViolins

*Cross reference display at 787.2:*

See also under the previous number: 787.1

### i - Reference instruction phrase in subfield ≠ i

Code i is used in conjunction with subfield ≠ i (Reference instruction phrase) when explicit text is needed that does not fall into any other category.

### j - See reference

Code j indicates that the number in the tracing field is a simple see reference that guides the user from the number(s) in the tracing field (field 453 or 553) to the number(s) in field 153 (Classification Number). The code may be used to generate a special reference instruction phrase such as *see* or *For [topic] see [number]*.

- 084 0b ≠ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]  
153 bb ≠ zP-PZ1 ≠ a499 ≠ hTable for languages (900 nos.) ≠ hTranslating ≠ jMachine translating  
553 1b ≠ wj ≠ zP-PZ1 ≠ a691 ≠ hTable for languages ≠ hLexicography ≠ hDictionaries ≠ hOther special lists ≠ jWord frequency lists ≠ tResearch on word frequency, etc., in connection with machine translating  
680 b0 ≠ iIncluding research

*Cross reference display example at 691, Table I, P-PZ:*

Table for languages (900 nos.)

Lexicography

Dictionaries

Other special lists

Word frequency lists

Research on word frequency, etc., in connection with machine translating,

see P-PZ, Table I, 499

- 084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
153 bb ≠ a621.45 ≠ hTechnology (Applied sciences) ≠ hEngineering and allied operations ≠ hApplied physics ≠ hHeat engineering and prime movers ≠ jWind engines  
553 0b ≠ wjg ≠ a621.42 ≠ hTechnology (Applied sciences) ≠ hEngineering and allied operations ≠ hApplied physics ≠ hHeat engineering and prime movers ≠ j Stirling engines and air motors

*Cross reference display example at 621.42:*

621.42 Stirling engines and air motors

*For wind engines, see 621.45*

## Tracing and Reference Fields

### **k - Class elsewhere reference [553 only]**

Code k indicates that the topic in subfield  $\neq$  t (Topic) of the tracing field is classed in another number that is not a subdivision of the number in subfield  $\neq$  a (Classification number element—Single number or beginning number of span) of field 553. The code may be used to generate a special instruction phrase such as *Class [topic] in [number]*.

084 0b  $\neq$  addc  $\neq$  c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb  $\neq$  a 331.23  $\neq$  hSocial sciences  $\neq$  hEconomics  $\neq$  kEconomics of labor, finance, land, energy  $\neq$  hLabor economics  $\neq$  hConditions of employment  $\neq$  jGuaranteed-wage plans

553 0b  $\neq$  wk  $\neq$  a331.2162  $\neq$  hSocial sciences  $\neq$  hEconomics  $\neq$  kEconomics of labor, finance, land, energy  $\neq$  hLabor economics  $\neq$  hConditions of employment  $\neq$  hCompensation  $\neq$  hMethods of compensation  $\neq$  tTime payments

*Cross reference display example at 331.2162:*

Class Guaranteed-wage plans in 331.23

### **l - See also reference [553 only]**

Code l indicates that the number in the tracing field guides the user from the number(s) in field 553 to related topics classed in the number(s) in field 153. The code may be used to generate a special instruction phrase such as *Cf. [number] [topic] or see also [number] for [topic]*.

084 0b  $\neq$  addc  $\neq$  c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb  $\neq$  a305.562  $\neq$  hSocial sciences  $\neq$  kSpecific topics in sociology and anthropology  $\neq$  hSocial groups  $\neq$  hSocial classes  $\neq$  hLower, alienated, excluded classes  $\neq$  jLaboring classes (Proletariat)

553 0b  $\neq$  wl  $\neq$  a331  $\neq$  hSocial sciences  $\neq$  hEconomics  $\neq$  kEconomics of labor, finance, land, energy  $\neq$  jLabor economics  $\neq$  tsociology of laboring classes

084 0b  $\neq$  addc  $\neq$  c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb  $\neq$  a306.36  $\neq$  hSocial sciences  $\neq$  kSpecific topics in sociology and anthropology  $\neq$  hCulture and institutions  $\neq$  hEconomic institutions  $\neq$  jSystems of labor

553 0b  $\neq$  wl  $\neq$  a331  $\neq$  hSocial sciences  $\neq$  hEconomics  $\neq$  kEconomics of labor, finance, land, energy  $\neq$  jLabor economics  $\neq$  tsociology of labor

*Cross reference display example at 331:*

See also 305.562 for sociology of laboring classes, 306.36 for sociology of labor

### **m - Standard subdivisions do-not-use reference**

Code m indicates that one or more standard subdivisions may not be used with the number in the tracing field. The code may be used to generate a special instruction phrase such as *Do not use for [topic]; class in [number]*.

084 0b  $\neq$  addc  $\neq$  c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb  $\neq$  a331.01  $\neq$  hSocial sciences  $\neq$  hEconomics  $\neq$  kEconomics of labor, finance, land, energy  $\neq$  hLabor economics  $\neq$  jPhilosophy and theory

553 0b  $\neq$  wmh  $\neq$  a331.011  $\neq$  hSocial sciences  $\neq$  hEconomics  $\neq$  kEconomics of labor, finance, land, energy  $\neq$  hLabor economics  $\neq$  hPhilosophy and theory  $\neq$  jRights and position of labor  $\neq$  tsystems analysis applied to labor economics



*Cross reference display example at 331.011:*

Do not use for systems analysis applied to labor economics; class in 331.01

## **n - Not applicable**

Code n indicates that the relationship between the heading in the tracing field and the 153 heading is not one of the special relationships for which other codes are defined in subfield  $\neq$  w/0. A tag related reference instruction phrase such as *see* or *see also* may be used in a cross reference display from the related heading. If code n is applicable, subfield  $\neq$  w need not be coded unless a subsequent character position is required.

## **$\neq$ w/1 - Hierarchical relationship**

Subfield  $\neq$  w/1 contains a one-character alphabetic code which indicates the nature of the hierarchy when the tracing is for a hierarchical relationship between topics. The codes may be used to generate a special instruction phrase in a cross reference display.

**g - Number representing broader topic**

**h - Number representing narrower topic**

**n - Not applicable**

## **g - Number representing broader topic**

Code g indicates that the number in the tracing field represents a broader topic than the number at the preceding level of the caption hierarchy that is contained in field 153 (Classification Number). The code may be used to generate a special reference instruction phrase such as *see also under the narrower number:* in a cross reference display.

084 0b  $\neq$  addc  $\neq$  c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb  $\neq$  a621.252  $\neq$  hTechnology (Applied sciences)  $\neq$  hEngineering and allied operations  $\neq$  hApplied physics  $\neq$  kFluid-power technologies  $\neq$  hHydraulic-power technology  $\neq$  hPumps and accumulators  $\neq$  jPumps

553 0b  $\neq$  wjg  $\neq$  a621.69  $\neq$  hTechnology (Applied sciences)  $\neq$  hEngineering and allied operations  $\neq$  hApplied physics  $\neq$  hBlowers, fans, pumps  $\neq$  kPumps  $\neq$  jPumps. Pneumatic pumps  $\neq$  thdraulic pumps

084 0b  $\neq$  addc  $\neq$  c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb  $\neq$  a621.64  $\neq$  hTechnology (Applied sciences)  $\neq$  hEngineering and allied operations  $\neq$  hApplied physics  $\neq$  hBlowers, fans, pumps  $\neq$  kPumps  $\neq$  jHand pumps

553 0b  $\neq$  wjg  $\neq$  a621.69  $\neq$  hTechnology (Applied sciences)  $\neq$  hEngineering and allied operations  $\neq$  hApplied physics  $\neq$  hBlowers, fans, pumps  $\neq$  kPumps  $\neq$  jPumps. Pneumatic pumps  $\neq$  thand pumps

084 0b  $\neq$  addc  $\neq$  c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb  $\neq$  a621.65  $\neq$  hTechnology (Applied sciences)  $\neq$  hEngineering and allied operations  $\neq$  hApplied physics  $\neq$  hBlowers, fans, pumps  $\neq$  kPumps  $\neq$  jReciprocating pumps

553 0b  $\neq$  wjg  $\neq$  a621.69  $\neq$  hTechnology (Applied sciences)  $\neq$  hEngineering and allied operations  $\neq$  hApplied physics  $\neq$  hBlowers, fans, pumps  $\neq$  kPumps  $\neq$  jPumps. Pneumatic pumps  $\neq$  treciprocating pumps



## Tracing and Reference Fields

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a621.66 ≠ hTechnology (Applied sciences) ≠ hEngineering and allied operations ≠ hApplied physics ≠ hBlowers, fans, pumps ≠ kPumps ≠ jRotary pumps

553 0b ≠ wjg ≠ a621.69 ≠ hTechnology (Applied sciences) ≠ hEngineering and allied operations ≠ hApplied physics ≠ hBlowers, fans, pumps ≠ kPumps ≠ jPumps. Pneumatic pumps ≠ t rotary pumps

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a621.67 ≠ hTechnology (Applied sciences) ≠ hEngineering and allied operations ≠ hApplied physics ≠ hBlowers, fans, pumps ≠ kPumps ≠ jCentrifugal pumps

553 0b ≠ wjg ≠ a621.69 ≠ hTechnology (Applied sciences) ≠ hEngineering and allied operations ≠ hApplied physics ≠ hBlowers, fans, pumps ≠ kPumps ≠ jPumps. Pneumatic pumps ≠ t centrifugal pumps

*Cross reference display at 621.69:*

For hydraulic pumps, see 621.252; for hand pumps, see 621.64; for reciprocating pumps, see 621.65; for rotary pumps, see 621.66; for centrifugal pumps, see 621.67

*[In this example, subfield ≠ w/0 controls the display, which is for a see reference.]*

### h - Number representing narrower topic

Code h indicates that the number in the tracing field represents a narrower topic than the number at the lower level of the caption hierarchy that is contained in field 153. The code may be used to generate a special reference instruction phrase such as *see also under the broader number:* in a cross reference display.

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a666.3 ≠ hTechnology (Applied sciences) ≠ hChemical engineering and related technologies ≠ hCeramic and allied technologies ≠ jPottery

553 0b ≠ wkh ≠ a666.5 ≠ c666.6 ≠ hTechnology (Applied sciences) ≠ hChemical engineering and related technologies ≠ hCeramic and allied technologies ≠ jSpecific types of pottery ≠ t comprehensive works

*Cross reference display at 666.5-666.6:*

Class comprehensive works in 666.3

*[In this example subfield ≠ w/0 controls the display.]*

### n - Not applicable

Code n indicates that a hierarchical relationship is not applicable to the tracing. If code n is applicable, subfield ≠ w/1 need not be coded unless a subsequent character position is required.

### ≠ w/2 - Reference display

Subfield ≠ w/2 contains a one-character alphabetic code that enables the generation or suppression of a cross reference from a 453 or 553 field.

**a - Reference not displayed**

**n - Not applicable**

## a - Reference not displayed

Code a indicates that the generation of a cross reference display from a tracing field should be suppressed. Code a is used when a 253 or 353 complex reference field contains the reference to be displayed or when it is otherwise not desirable to display the reference.

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*

153 bb ‡ a230 ‡ c270 ‡ hReligion ‡ kChristianity ‡ jSpecific elements of Christianity

553 0b ‡ wnga ‡ a230 ‡ c280 ‡ hReligion ‡ jChristianity

*[The 553 field contains a tracing from a DDC centered entry, or broader number span, which facilitates online browsing.]*

## n - Not applicable

Code n indicates that there is no reference display restriction on the tracing field. If code n is applicable, subfield ‡ w/2 need not be coded unless ‡ w/3 is used.

## ‡ w/3 - History reference

Subfield ‡ w/3 contains a one-character alphabetic code that indicates whether field 685 (History Note) in a record refers to the number in a 453 or 553 tracing.

### a - History reference, field 685 used

#### b - Not applicable

## a - History reference, field 685 used

Code a indicates that the record contains a field 685 that contains further information about the number in the 453 or 553 tracing field.

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*

153 bb ‡ z2 ‡ a71334 ‡ hGeographic Areas, Historical Periods, Persons ‡ kSpecific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds ‡ kThe modern world; extraterrestrial worlds ‡ hNorth America ‡ hCanada ‡ hOntario ‡ kSouthern Ontario ‡ hLake Erie region ‡ jElgin County

453 1b ‡ wanna ‡ z2 ‡ a71335 ‡ hGeographic Areas, Historical Periods, Persons ‡ kSpecific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds ‡ kThe modern world; extraterrestrial worlds ‡ hNorth America ‡ hCanada ‡ hOntario ‡ kSouthern Ontario ‡ hLake Erie region ‡ jSt. Thomas

685 10 ‡ iRelocated to ‡ z2 ‡ a71334 ‡ d19960930 ‡ 221

*Cross reference display at T2-71335:*

--[71335] St. Thomas

See the new number: T2-71335

Relocated to -71335

*[If desired the tracing may be suppressed for display purposes. The second note about relocation is generated from field 685 (History Note).]*

## n - Not applicable

Code n indicates either that the record does not contain field 685 (History Note) or that field 685 refers to the classification number contained in field 153. If code n is applicable, subfield ‡ w/3 need not be coded.

## Tracing and Reference Fields

### ■ REFERENCE FIELDS—COMPLEX CROSS REFERENCES

Complex cross references are carried directly in records as reference note fields. They are used when relationships exist between classification numbers that cannot be adequately conveyed by one or more simple cross references generated from 453 or 553 tracings. Subfield  $\neq$  i (Explanatory text) contains textual information in field 253 (Complex See Reference) or field 353 (Complex See Also Reference).

008/06    b            [table record]

084    0b  $\neq$  alcc        [Library of Congress Classification]

153    bb  $\neq$  zKF1  $\neq$  a7.5  $\neq$  c7.529  $\neq$  hTable of form divisions (20 nos.)  $\neq$  hStatutes.

Regulations. Rules of practice  $\neq$  hFederal legislation  $\neq$  hRegulations. Rules of practice  $\neq$  jParticular regulations or rules of practice (or groups of regulations or rules adopted as a whole)

253    0b  $\neq$  iFor rules of practice before a separately classed agency, see the issuing agency

---

### INPUT CONVENTIONS

The general input conventions for the 453 and 553 tracing fields are provided in the *X53 Classification Numbers—General Information* section. The input conventions for the Reference fields are provided in the description of each field.

**Display Constants for Cross References** - In the 453 and 553 tracing fields, reference instruction phrases such as those listed below are not carried in the MARC record. They may be system generated as display constants associated with the field tag.

#### Tag-related:

see:

see also:

In complex reference fields 253 and 353, the complete reference instruction may be a combination of a tag-related phrase, such as *see:* or *see also:* and explicit text in subfield  $\neq$  i.

---

### SCHEME-SPECIFIC CONVENTIONS

The general scheme specific conventions for the 453 and 553 tracing fields are provided in the *X53 Classification Numbers—General Information* section. The scheme-specific conventions for the Reference fields (253, 353) are provided in the description of each field. The *Library of Congress Classification* scheme does not use subfield  $\neq$  t in field 453.

**Display Constants for Cross References** - In the 453 and 553 tracing fields, reference instruction phrases such as those listed below are not carried in the MARC record. The following display constants may be system generated by the code in subfield  $\neq$  w/O (Special relationship) and the code in field 084 (Classification Scheme and Edition).

## Tracing and Reference Fields

<u>Code</u>	<u>Name</u>	<u>DDC</u>	<u>LCC</u>
a	Previous number	<i>undetermined</i>	<i>undetermined</i>
b	New number	<i>undetermined</i>	<i>undetermined</i>
j	See	For <i>topic</i> see <i>number</i>	<i>topic</i> see <i>number</i>
k	Class elsewhere	Class <i>topic</i> in <i>number</i>	<i>not applicable</i>
l	See also	See also <i>number</i> for <i>topic</i>	Cf. <i>number topic</i>
m	Standard subdivision	Do not use for <i>topic</i> ; class in <i>number</i>	<i>not applicable</i>

The following display constants may be system generated by the code in subfield #w/1 (Hierarchical relationship).

<u>Code</u>	<u>Name</u>	<u>DDC</u>	<u>LCC</u>
g	Number representing broader topic	see also under the narrower number	<i>undetermined</i>
h	Number representing narrower topic	see also under the broader number	<i>undetermined</i>

---





## 253 Complex See Reference (R)

### First Indicator

Type of reference

- 0 See reference
- 1 Standard subdivisions  
do-not-use-reference
- 2 Class elsewhere reference

### Second Indicator

Undefined

Undefined

### Subfield Codes

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| ≠a Classification number referred to—single<br>number or beginning number of span (R) | ≠i Explanatory text (R)               |
| ≠c Classification number referred<br>to—ending number of span (R)                     | ≠z Table identification (R)           |
|   | ≠6 Linkage (NR)                       |
|   | ≠8 Field link and sequence number (R) |

## FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains *explanatory text* and the *Classification number referred to* that are required when a *see reference* relationship exists between classification numbers that cannot be adequately conveyed by one or more simple cross references generated from a 453 (Invalid Number Tracing) or 553 (Valid Number Tracing) tracing field. A *see also* reference that directs the user to a related number is contained in field 353 (Complex See Also Reference).

A cross reference display may be constructed from the 153 and 253 fields of the record. Field 153 (Classification Number) contains the classification number or span referred from. Field 253 contains the explanatory text for the reference and the other classification number(s) or span(s) referred to. When several reference notes are associated with a classification number, each may be recorded in a separate field or they may be combined and recorded in a single field. References providing information about use of numbers discontinued in whole or in part for a topic and about topics relocated in whole or in part to other numbers are contained in field 685 (History Note).

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

### ■ INDICATORS

#### First Indicator - Type of reference

The first indicator position contains a value that indicates the type of reference contained in the field.

#### 0 - See reference

Value 0 indicates a *see* reference to a classification number or span in another classification record.

- 084 0b ≠ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]  
 153 bb ≠ aHE198 ≠ hTransportation and communications ≠ jGovernment ownership (General)  
 253 0b ≠ iFor government ownership of a specific mode of transportation, see the mode

### 1 - Standard subdivisions do-not-use reference

Value 1 indicates instructions prohibiting the use of one or more standard subdivisions.

- 084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb ≠ a130.112 ≠ hPhilosophy, paranormal phenomena, psychology ≠ hParanormal phenomena ≠ hPhilosophy and theory ≠ hSystems ≠ jForecasting and forecasts  
 253 1b ≠ iDo not use; class comprehensive works on parapsychological and occult forecasting and forecasts in ≠ a133.3. ≠ iClass a specific type of forecasting or forecast with the type, without adding notation ≠ z1 ≠ a0112 ≠ ifrom Table 1, e.g., astrological methods of forecasting ≠ a133.5

### 2 - Class elsewhere reference

Value 2 indicates instructions to class a specified topic in another number that is not a subdivision of the number in field 153 (Classification Number). Often the reference cannot be made into a tracing because it does not refer to a particular classification number but is a general instruction.

- 084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb ≠ a303.6 ≠ hSocial sciences ≠ kSpecific topics in sociology and anthropology ≠ hSocial processes ≠ jConflict  
 253 2b ≠ iClass conflict in a specific social relation with the relation, e.g., racial conflict ≠ a305.8; ≠ iclass a specific conflict considered an historical event with the event in ≠ a900, ≠ ie.g., disturbances of May-June 1968 in France ≠ a944.0836

### Second Indicator - Undefined

The second indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (b).

### ■ SUBFIELD CODES

#### ≠ a - Classification number referred to—single number or beginning number of span

Subfield ≠ a contains either a single classification number or the beginning number of a classification number span to which reference is made from the classification number(s) in field 153 of the record.

- 084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb ≠ 612.39 ≠ hTechnology (Applied sciences) ≠ hMedical sciences. Medicine ≠ hHuman physiology ≠ kSpecific functions, systems, organs ≠ hDigestion ≠ jMetabolism  
 253 2b ≠ iFor metabolism within a specific function, system, or organ, see the function, system, or organ, e.g., metabolism of plasma ≠ a612.116

- 084 0b ≠ afcps [Canadian PS8000 Classification]  
 153 bb ≠ aPS8005 ≠ hCanadian literature ≠ hGeneral ≠ jSocieties  
 253 2b ≠ iSocieties devoted to literature in general are classed in ≠ aPN21 ≠ cPN29

#### ≠ c - Classification number referred to—ending number of span

Subfield ≠ c contains the ending number of a classification number span to which reference is made from the classification number(s) in field 153 of the record.

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ‡ a745.674 ‡ hThe arts. Fine and decorative arts ‡ kFine and decorative arts ‡ hDrawing and decorative arts ‡ hDecorative arts ‡ hCalligraphy, heraldic design, illumination ‡ hIllumination of manuscripts and books ‡ jIlluminated manuscripts and books by language

253 2b ‡ iClass illuminated manuscripts and books in specific languages produced in specific countries and localities in ‡ a745.67093 ‡ c745.67099

#### ‡ i - Explanatory text

Subfield ‡ i contains the explanatory text of the see reference or see note. The text may be broken up by subfield ‡ a or ‡ c data and may be only a connector term, such as *e.g.* or *and*.

084 0b ‡ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ‡ zKF1 ‡ a7.5 ‡ c7.529 ‡ hTable of form divisions (20 nos.) ‡ hStatutes. Regulations. Rules of practice ‡ hFederal legislation ‡ hRegulations. Rules of practice ‡ jParticular regulations or rules of practice (or groups of regulations or rules adopted as a whole)

253 0b ‡ iFor rules of practice before a separately classed agency, see the issuing agency [The example is for a table record, as identified in 008/06 (Kind of record), code b (Table).]

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ‡ a003 ‡ hGeneralities ‡ jSystems

253 2b ‡ iClass systems in a specific subject or discipline with the subject or discipline, plus notation ‡ z1 ‡ a011 ‡ ifrom Table 1, e.g., systems theory in the social sciences ‡ a300.11

[A Complex See Reference must include all of the instructions needed for applying the table to the number.]

#### ‡ z - Table identification

Subfield ‡ z contains the identification of the table to which a classification number recorded in field 253 belongs, if the classification number is part of a table. For a classification number span, subfield ‡ z is given only once, before the first number.

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ‡ z1 ‡ a089 ‡ hStandard subdivisions ‡ hHistory and description with respect to kinds of persons ‡ jRacial, ethnic, national groups

253 2b ‡ iClass treatment with respect to miscellaneous specific kinds of persons of a specific racial, ethnic, national group in ‡ z1 ‡ a081 ‡ c088, ‡ ie.g., Chinese children ‡ z1 ‡ a083; ‡ iclass persons treatment (e.g., biography) of members of a specific racial, ethnic, national group in ‡ z1 ‡ a0923; ‡ iclass treatment with respect to specific racial, ethnic, national groups in places where they predominate in ‡ z1 ‡ a091 ‡ c099

[The reference note is too complex to be included in field 453 (Invalid Number Tracing) or field 553 (Valid Number Tracing).]

#### ‡ 6 - Linkage

#### ‡ 8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of these subfields in Appendix A.



**INPUT CONVENTIONS**

The input conventions described in the *X53 Classification Numbers-General Information* section are also applicable to this field.

**Display constants** - Display constants for a reference instruction phrase may be system generated on the basis of the field tag. However, because several types of standard wording may be used for see references, it may not be desirable to use display constants. In cases where display constants are not used, all terms to be displayed are recorded explicitly in field 253 subfield  $\neq$  i (Explanatory text).

---

**SCHEME-SPECIFIC CONVENTIONS**

The scheme-specific conventions described in the *X53 Classification Numbers-General Information* section are also applicable to this field.

**Library of Congress Classification** - For *LCC*, field 253 is used for the following situations:

- If more than three numbers are referred to, which would require more than three tracings in three separate records
  - If a synthesized number is referred to and it is not desirable to create a separate record for it
  - If a span of numbers or whole subclasses are referred to for which no separate classification record exists
  - For a general reference note that does not contain a specific classification number or that includes a specific number or numbers only as illustrative examples.
-

## 353 Complex See Also Reference (R)

### First Indicator

Undefined

␣ Undefined

### Second Indicator

Undefined

␣ Undefined

### Subfield Codes

⊢a Classification number referred to—single number or beginning number of span (R)

⊢c Classification number referred to—ending number of span (R)

⊢i Explanatory text (R)

⊢z Table identification (R)

⊢6 Linkage (NR)

⊢8 Field link and sequence number (R)

## FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains *explanatory text* and the *classification number referred to* that are required when see also reference relationships exist between classification numbers that cannot be adequately conveyed by one or more simple cross references generated from field 553 (Valid Number Tracing). This field guides the user to related topics classed in other valid classification numbers. A Complex See Also Reference is appropriate only in valid or partially valid classification number records (as indicated in 008/08 (Classification validity), code a, b, or c).

A cross reference display may be constructed from the 153 and 353 fields of the record. Field 153 (Classification Number) contains the classification number or span referred from and field 353 contains the classification number or span referred to. When several reference notes are associated with a classification number, each note may be recorded in a separate field or they may be combined and recorded in a single field.

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

### ■ INDICATORS

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (␣).

### ■ SUBFIELD CODES

#### ⊢a - Classification number referred to—single number or beginning number of span

Subfield ⊢a contains a single classification number or the beginning number of a classification number span to which reference is made from the classification number(s) in field 153 of the record.

084 0␣⊢addc⊢c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 ␣␣⊢a384.6025⊢hSocial sciences⊢hCommerce, communications, transportation⊢k Communications and transportation⊢hCommunications. Telecommunication⊢k Telecommunication⊢hTelephony⊢jDirectories of persons and organizations

353 ␣␣⊢a914⊢c919,⊢iplus notation⊢a0025⊢ifrom table under⊢a913⊢c919,⊢ifor telephone directories, e.g., New York City telephone directory⊢a917.4710025

- 084 0b ≠ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]  
 153 bb ≠ aF2423 ≠ hLatin America. Spanish America ≠ hSouth America ≠ hGuiana ≠ hSurinam. Netherlands or Dutch Guiana ≠ hHistory ≠ hBy period ≠ j1604-1814  
 353 bb ≠ iCf. ≠ aF2381 ≠ cF2383 ≠ iEssequibo, Dememrara, and Berbice (Former Dutch colonies)  
*[The reference is for a number span that cannot exist as a separate record because it encompasses several hierarchies.]*

#### ≠ c - Classification number referred to—ending number of span

Subfield ≠ c contains an element of the ending number of a classification number span to which reference is made from the classification number(s) in field 153 of the record. The element may consist of the whole classification number or a part of the classification number.

- 084 0b ≠ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]  
 153 bb ≠ zL5 ≠ a19.8 ≠ hTables of subdivisions: Institutions in America (LD-LE) ≠ hHistory and description ≠ jDormitories, residence halls, etc.  
 353 bb ≠ iCf. ≠ aNA6600 + , ≠ iArchitecture  
*[The reference is for a number span that cannot exist as a separate record because it encompasses several hierarchies.]*

#### ≠ i - Explanatory text

Subfield ≠ i contains the explanatory text of the see also reference. The text may be broken up by subfield ≠ a or ≠ c data and may be only a connector term, such as *e.g.* or *and*.

- 084 0b ≠ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]  
 153 bb ≠ aHF5030 ≠ cHF5335.22 ≠ hCommerce ≠ hBusiness ≠ jDirectories  
 353 bb ≠ iCf. classes D, E, F, Local residence directories which include business directories

#### ≠ z - Table identification

Subfield ≠ z contains the identification of the table to which a classification number recorded in field 353 belongs, if the classification number is part of a table. For a classification number span, subfield ≠ z is given only once, before the first number.

- 084 0b ≠ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]  
 153 bb ≠ zZ1 ≠ a13.C78 ≠ hNational bibliography. Imprints ≠ hLiterature (General) ≠ hSpecial topics, A-Z ≠ jComparative literature  
 353 bb ≠ iCf. ≠ aZ6514.C7, ≠ iComparative literature (General)  
*[Reference is from a table number to a schedule number.]*

#### ≠ 6 - Linkage

#### ≠ 8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of these subfields in Appendix A.

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

The input conventions described in the *X53 Classification Numbers—General Information* section are also applicable to this field.

**Display constants** - Display constants for a reference instruction phrase may be system generated on the basis of the field tag. However, because several types of standard wording may be used for see references, it may not be desirable to use display constants. In cases where display constants are not used, all terms to be displayed are recorded explicitly in field 353 subfield  $\neq$  i (Explanatory text).

---

## SCHEME-SPECIFIC CONVENTIONS

The scheme-specific conventions described in the *X53 Classification Numbers-General Information* section are also applicable to this field.

**Library of Congress Classification** - For *LCC*, field 353 is used for the following situations:

- If more than three numbers are referred to, which would require more than three tracings in three separate records
- If a synthesized number is referred to and it is not desirable to create a separate record for it
- If a span of numbers or whole subclasses are referred to for which no separate classification record exists
- For a general reference note that does not contain a specific classification number or that includes a specific number or numbers only as illustrative examples.

**Dewey Decimal Classification** - This field is not likely to be used frequently in the *Dewey Decimal Classification* except when it is desirable to provide both complex reference fields (253, 353) and tracing fields (453, 553). Since the majority of see also references can be accommodated in a simple see also tracing field (353), the example shown is only intended to illustrate the coding of data elements, not to show instances of actual use.

---





**453 Invalid Number Tracing (R)****First Indicator**

Source of classification number

- 0 Schedule
- 1 Table

**Second Indicator**

Undefined

- b Undefined

**Subfield Codes***Number portion*

- ≠a Classification number—single number or beginning number of span (R)
- ≠c Classification number—ending number of span (R)
- ≠z Table identification (NR)

*Caption portion*

- ≠h Caption hierarchy (R)
- ≠j Caption (NR)
- ≠k Summary number span caption hierarchy (R)

*Tracing subfields*

- ≠i Reference instruction phrase (NR)
- ≠t Topic (NR)
- ≠w Control subfield (NR)
  - /0 Special relationship
  - /1 Hierarchical relationship
  - /2 Reference display
  - /3 History reference
- ≠6 Linkage (NR)
- ≠8 Field link and sequence number (R)

**FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

This field contains a tracing for a cross reference from an invalid classification number. It is used for a valid or partially valid classification number (008/08, Classification validity, code a, b or c) record to trace a reference from an invalid to a valid number. When a 453 number tracing field cannot adequately convey necessary information about an invalid classification number, a separate record may be created for the invalid number (008/08 (Classification validity), code d) containing field 253 (Complex See Reference). In such instances, a 453 number tracing field may also be included in the valid or partially valid classification number record in the record for the valid number if desired. A tracing for a valid classification number that is invalid only for a particular topic is contained in field 553 (Valid Number Tracing). The content designators used in the classification number and caption portions of field 453 are the same as those defined for fields 153 (Classification Number) and 553 (Valid Number Tracing).

**GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**

Guidelines for applying these content designators, including indicators, scheme-specific conventions and input conventions are given in the *X53 Classification Numbers—General Information* section. The guidelines for applying tracing subfield codes ≠i (Reference instruction phrase), ≠t (Topic) and ≠w (Control subfield), are given in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

## ■ EXAMPLES

084 0b ≠ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ≠ aHA29 ≠ cHA32 ≠ hSocial science (General) ≠ hStatistics ≠ jTheory and method of social science statistics

453 0b ≠ wj ≠ aH61.5 ≠ hSocial Science (General) ≠ hTheory. Method. Relation to other subjects ≠ jStatistical methods

084 0b ≠ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ≠ aNA2795 ≠ hArchitecture ≠ jColor in architecture. Polychromy (General)

453 0b ≠ wj ≠ aNA3640.52 ≠ hArchitecture ≠ hArchitectural decoration ≠ jPainted decoration (Color use)

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a621.388337 ≠ hTechnology (Applied sciences) ≠ hEngineering and allied operations ≠ hApplied physics ≠ hElectrical engineering; lighting; superconductivity; magnetic engineering; applied optics; paraphotic technology; electronics; communications engineering; computers ≠ hElectronics, communications engineering ≠ kSpecific communications systems ≠ hTelevision ≠ hComponents and devices ≠ hVideo recorders and video recordings ≠ jMaintenance and repair of video recorders and video recordings

453 0b ≠ wmna ≠ a621.3883320288 ≠ hTechnology (Applied sciences) ≠ hEngineering and allied operations ≠ hApplied physics ≠ hElectrical engineering; lighting; superconductivity; magnetic engineering; applied optics; paraphotic technology; electronics; communications engineering; computers ≠ hElectronics, communications engineering ≠ kSpecific communications systems ≠ hTelevision ≠ hComponents and devices ≠ hVideorecorders and videorecordings ≠ hMiscellany ≠ hAuxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials ≠ jMaintenance and repair

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ z4 ≠ a2 ≠ hSubdivisions of Individual Languages and Language Families ≠ kDescription and analysis of the standard form of the language ≠ jEtymology of the standard form of the language

453 1b ≠ wm ≠ z4 ≠ a142 ≠ hSubdivisions of Individual Languages and Language Families ≠ hPhilosophy and theory ≠ hLanguage and communication ≠ jEtymology

008/08 a [valid]

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a133.3 ≠ hPhilosophy, paranormal phenomena, psychology ≠ hParanormal phenomena ≠ hParapsychology and occultism ≠ jDivinatory arts

453 0b ≠ wm ≠ a130.112 ≠ hPhilosophy, paranormal phenomena, psychology ≠ hParanormal phenomena ≠ jForecasting and forecasts ≠ tcomprehensive works on parapsychological and occult forecasting and forecasts

008/08 d [invalid]

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ wm ≠ a130.112 ≠ hPhilosophy, paranormal phenomena, psychology ≠ hParanormal phenomena ≠ jForecasting and forecasts

253 1b ≠ iDo not use; class comprehensive works on parapsychological and occult forecasting and forecasts in ≠ a133.3. ≠ iClass a specific type of forecasting or forecast with the type, without adding notation ≠ z1 ≠ a0112 ≠ ifrom Table 1, e.g., astrological methods of forecasting ≠ a133.5

[This example illustrates a record that uses a 453 tracing for the invalid number and a reciprocal invalid record that uses a 253 complex reference field.]

## 553 Valid Number Tracing (R)

### First Indicator

Source of classification number

- 0 Schedule
- 1 Table

### Second Indicator

Undefined

- b Undefined

### Subfield Codes

#### *Number portion*

- ≠a Classification number—single number or beginning number of span (R)
- ≠c Classification number—ending number of span (R)
- ≠z Table identification (NR)

#### *Caption portion*

- ≠h Caption hierarchy (R)
- ≠j Caption (NR)
- ≠k Summary number span caption hierarchy (R)

#### *Tracing subfields*

- ≠i Reference instruction phrase (NR)
- ≠t Topic (NR)
- ≠w Control subfield (NR)
  - /0 Special relationship
  - /1 Hierarchical relationship
  - /2 Reference display
  - /3 History reference
- ≠6 Linkage (NR)
- ≠8 Field link and sequence number (R)

## FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a tracing from one valid classification number to another. It is used in a record for a valid or partially valid classification number (008/08, Classification validity, code a, b or c). If the classification number in the tracing is valid for some topics but invalid for others, this field is used, and the topics that refer to another number are specified in subfield ≠t (Topic). The content designators used in the classification number and caption portions of field 553 are the same as those defined for fields 153 (Classification Number) and 453 (Invalid Number Tracing).

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Guidelines for applying these content designators, including indicators, scheme-specific conventions and input conventions are given in the *X53 Classification Numbers—General Information* section. The guidelines for applying tracing subfield codes ≠i (Reference instruction phrase), ≠t (Topic) and ≠w (Control subfield), are given in the *Tracing and Reference Fields—General Information* section.

### ■ EXAMPLES

084 0b ≠addc ≠c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠a347.4202 ≠c347.4204 ≠hSocial sciences ≠hLaw ≠kBranches of law; laws (statutes), regulations, cases; law of specific jurisdictions, areas, socioeconomic regions ≠kBranches of law ≠hCivil procedure and courts ≠hSpecific jurisdictions and areas ≠kThe modern world; extraterrestrial worlds ≠hEurope. Western Europe ≠hCivil procedure and courts of England ≠jCourts with specific kinds of jurisdiction



- 553 0b ‡ wjg ‡ a347.4201 ‡ hSocial sciences ‡ hLaw ‡ kBranches of law; laws (statutes), regulations, cases; law of specific jurisdictions, areas, socioeconomic regions ‡ kBranches of law ‡ hCivil procedure and courts ‡ hSpecific jurisdictions and areas ‡ kThe modern world; extraterrestrial worlds ‡ hEurope. Western Europe ‡ hCivil procedure and courts of England ‡ jCourts ‡ tCourts with specific kinds of jurisdiction
- 084 0b ‡ alcc      *[Library of Congress Classification]*
- 153 bb ‡ aTR210 ‡ cTR212 ‡ hPhotography ‡ hTheory of photographic processes in general ‡ jPhotographic chemistry and chemicals
- 553 0b ‡ wl ‡ aQD701 ‡ cQD731 ‡ hChemistry ‡ hPhysical and theoretical chemistry ‡ jPhotochemistry ‡ tPhotographic chemistry and chemicals
- 084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21      *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*
- 153 bb ‡ a542.1 ‡ hNatural sciences and mathematics ‡ hChemistry and allied sciences ‡ kChemistry ‡ kGeneral topics in chemistry ‡ hTechniques, procedures, apparatus, equipment, materials ‡ jLaboratories
- 553 0b ‡ wm ‡ a540.72 ‡ hNatural sciences and mathematics ‡ hChemistry and allied sciences ‡ hEducation, research, related topics ‡ jResearch ‡ tlaboratories
- 084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21      *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*
- 153 bb ‡ z2 ‡ a482 ‡ c484 ‡ hGeographic Areas, Historical Periods, Persons ‡ kSpecific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds ‡ kThe modern world; extraterrestrial worlds ‡ hEurope. Western Europe ‡ hScandinavia ‡ jDivisions of Norway
- 553 1b ‡ wjg ‡ z2 ‡ a481 ‡ hGeographic Areas, Historical Periods, Persons ‡ kSpecific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds ‡ kThe modern world; extraterrestrial worlds ‡ hEurope. Western Europe ‡ hScandinavia ‡ jNorway ‡ tdivisions of Norway
-





## 6XX Note Fields--General Information

- 680 Scope Note (R)
  - 681 Classification Example Tracing Note (R)
  - 683 Application Instruction Note (R)
  - 684 Auxiliary Instruction Note (R)
  - 685 History Note (R)
  - 686 Relationship to Source Note (R)
- 

### DEFINITION AND SCOPE

The Note fields contain textual information about the scope of the classification number in field 153 (Classification Number) and instruct classifiers in the use of classification numbers. Except for field 680 (Scope Note), which is intended for display to public catalog users in addition to guiding classifiers, these notes often are not written in a form adequate for public user display. All note fields except 681 (Classification Example Tracing Note) are provided with subfield #8 (Field link and sequence number) to link and sequence fields in the proper order when the maintenance of a certain order is vital for the application and understanding of the instructions.

Footnotes containing instructions that apply to several classification numbers are converted to the appropriate 6XX or 76X field.

---





## 680 Scope Note (R)

### First Indicator

Hierarchical force

- 0 Not applicable or no hierarchical force
- 1 Hierarchical force
- 2 Semihierarchical force

### Second Indicator

Undefined

- b Undefined

### Subfield Codes

- |    |   |    |  |
|----|---|----|--|
| ⌠a | Classification number—single number or beginning number of span (R) | ⌠z | Table identification (R)               |
| ⌠c | Classification number—ending number of span (R)                     | ⌠5 | Institution to which field applies (R) |
| ⌠i | Explanatory text (R)  | ⌠6 | Linkage (NR)                           |
|    |   | ⌠8 | Field link and sequence number (NR)    |

## FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains information about a classification number or span in field 153 (Classification Number) that describes the scope of the number(s) in the classification scheme identified in field 084 (Classification Schedule and Edition). Field 680 is used for information such as an explanation and examples of the kinds of topics classed in the number or contrasting information regarding the scope and usage of other similar classification numbers. A separate 680 field is used when different types of notes are used or different characteristics apply. The information in this field is intended for display to public catalog users in addition to guiding classifiers.

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

### ■ INDICATORS

#### First Indicator - Hierarchical force

The first indicator position contains a value that specifies whether or not the note applies to subordinate classification numbers.

#### 0 - Not applicable or no hierarchical force

Value 0 indicates that the note is from a classification scheme that does not make distinctions between hierarchical and non-hierarchical force or that the note has no hierarchical force.

084 0b ⌠alcc *[Library of Congress Classification]*  
 153 bb ⌠aPR2754.A ⌠cPR3754.Z ⌠hEnglish literature ⌠hEnglish renaissance  
 (1500-1640) ⌠hThe drama ⌠hIndividual authors ⌠hShakespeare,  
 William ⌠hCollected works ⌠hModern editions ⌠j20th century. By editor, publisher,  
 etc., A-Z  
 680 0b ⌠iClass here editions first edited in the 20th century

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a598.65 ≠ hNatural sciences and mathematics ≠ kLife sciences ≠ kNatural history of specific kinds of organisms ≠ kPlants and animals ≠ hAnimals ≠ kSpecific taxonomic groups of animals ≠ hAves (Birds) ≠ kLand birds ≠ hGalliformes and Columbiformes ≠ jColumbiformes

680 0b ≠ iIncluding Pteroclididae (sand grouse), dodos

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a331.255 ≠ hSocial sciences ≠ hEconomics ≠ kEconomics of labor, finance, land, energy ≠ hLabor economics ≠ hConditions of employment ≠ hOther conditions of employment ≠ jFringe benefits

680 0b ≠ iIncluding health and employee assistance programs, insurance, unemployment compensation

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a364.162 ≠ hSocial sciences ≠ hSocial problems & services; associations ≠ kSocial problems and services ≠ hCriminology ≠ hCriminal offenses ≠ hOffenses against property ≠ jLarceny (Theft)

680 0b ≠ iIncluding burglary, embezzlement, fencing

## 1 - Hierarchical force

Value 1 indicates that the note applies to subordinate classification numbers.

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a355.031 ≠ hSocial sciences ≠ hPublic administration and military science ≠ hMilitary science ≠ kBasic considerations of military science ≠ hMilitary situation and policy ≠ jMilitary relations

680 1b ≠ iClass here military alliances, mutual security pacts

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a153.4 ≠ hPhilosophy, paranormal phenomena, psychology ≠ hPsychology ≠ kSpecific topics in psychology ≠ hConscious mental processes and intelligence ≠ jThought, thinking, reasoning, intuition, value, judgment

680 1b ≠ iFormer heading: Cognition (Knowledge)

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a634.653 ≠ hTechnology (Applied sciences) ≠ hAgriculture and related technologies ≠ kSpecific plant crops ≠ hOrchards, fruits, forestry ≠ kOrchards and their fruits ≠ hTropical and subtropical fruits ≠ hPapayas, avocados, mangosteens ≠ jAvocados

680 1b ≠ iVariant name: alligator pears

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a004.7 ≠ hGeneralities ≠ hData processing. Computer science ≠ jPeripherals

680 1b ≠ iInput, output, storage devices that work with a computer but are not part of its central processing unit or internal storage  
[Input devices are classed in 004.76, output devices in 004.77, and storage devices in 004.56]

## 2 - Semihierarchical force

Value 2 indicates that the note applies only to some of the subordinate classification numbers, which are specified in the note.

- 084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb ‡ a704.9432 ‡ hThe arts. Fine and decorative arts ‡ kFine and decorative arts ‡ k  
 Standard subdivisions of fine and decorative arts ‡ hSpecial topics in fine and  
 decorative arts. History and description with respect to kinds of persons ‡ h  
 Iconography ‡ hSpecific subjects ‡ hNature and still life ‡ jAnimals  
 680 2b ‡ iHunting scenes are classed in ‡ a704.9432, ‡ iwithout use of ‡ a704.943201  
 ‡ c704.943209; ‡ ihunting scenes in which a specific animal is the center of  
 interest are classed with the animal in ‡ a704.94322 ‡ c704.94329

## Second Indicator - Undefined

The second indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (b).

## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

### ‡ a - Classification number—single number or beginning number of span

Subfield ‡ a contains a classification number that is used to amplify the explanatory text of the scope note. The classification number may be a single number or the beginning number of a span.

- 084 0b ‡ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]  
 153 bb ‡ aHB848 ‡ cHB3697 ‡ hEconomic theory. Demography ‡ jDemography.  
 Population. Vital events  
 680 0b ‡ iIncluding statistical works on specific aspects of population and vital events, as  
 for example, ‡ aHB1321 ‡ cHB1528, ‡ iMortality

### ‡ c - Classification number—ending number of span

Subfield ‡ c contains the ending number of a classification number span that is used to amplify the explanatory text of the scope note.

- 084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb ‡ a785.6 ‡ c785.9 ‡ hThe arts. Fine and decorative arts ‡ hMusic ‡ kPrinciples,  
 forms, ensembles, voices, instruments ‡ kEnsembles, voices, instruments ‡ k  
 Instruments and their music ‡ hEnsembles with only one instrument per part ‡ k  
 Specific kinds of ensembles ‡ jEnsembles consisting of only one instrumental group  
 680 1b ‡ iThe inclusion of "only one kind" in the ‡ a785.6 ‡ c785.9 ‡ iheadings limits the  
 subdivisions to individual kind of instruments, not to family of instruments. For  
 example, a string quartet, which usually consists of two violins, a viola, and a cello is  
 classed in ‡ a785.7194 ‡ istring quartets, not ‡ a785.72194 ‡ iviolin quartets  
 084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb ‡ z2 ‡ a3 ‡ c9 ‡ hGeographic Areas, Historical Periods, Persons ‡ jSpecific  
 continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds  
 680 1b ‡ iAn area is classed in its present number even if it had a different affiliation at  
 the time under consideration, e.g., Arizona under Mexican sovereignty ‡ z2 ‡ a791  
 ‡ i(not ‡ z2 ‡ a72)

### ‡ i - Explanatory text

Subfield ‡ i contains text that explains the scope of the classification number. Subfield ‡ i is repeated when other subfields are embedded in the explanatory text.



084 0b ≠ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ≠ zT2 ≠ a.H1 ≠ hTable for exhibitions. Trade shows ≠ hSpecial exhibitions ≠ jParts of the exposition

680 0b ≠ iWorks on various exhibits which cannot well be classified with any one subject, e.g., a work on an educational exhibit, goes in class L, Education, subdivision Exhibits, but a work on Machinery hall is classed here

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a780.94 ≠ hThe arts. Fine and decorative arts ≠ hMusic ≠ hHistorical, geographic, persons treatment ≠ jEurope. Western Europe

680 0b ≠ iUse only for works that stress that they are discussing the European origin and character of music in contrast to music from other sources

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a670 ≠ hTechnology (Applied sciences) ≠ jManufacturing

680 1b ≠ iGeneral aspects: planning, design, fabrication

#### ≠ z - Table identification

Subfield ≠ z contains the identification of the table to which the classification number in the note belongs, if the classification number recorded in field 680 is part of a table. For a classification number span, subfield ≠ z is given only once, before the first number.

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ z2 ≠ a3 ≠ c9 ≠ hGeographic Areas, Historical Periods, Persons ≠ jSpecific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds

680 1b ≠ iAn area is classed in its present number even if it had a different affiliation at the time under consideration, e.g., Arizona under Mexican sovereignty ≠ z2 ≠ a791 ≠ i(not ≠ z2 ≠ a72)

#### ≠ 5 - Institution to which field applies

#### ≠ 6 - Linkage

#### ≠ 8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of these subfields in Appendix A.

---

## SCHEME-SPECIFIC CONVENTIONS

**Dewey Decimal Classification** - The following types of notes indicate whether the note applies to subordinate classification numbers in *DDC*:

No hierarchical force  
(first indicator, value 0)  
Contains  
Example  
Common names  
Including

Hierarchical force  
(first indicator, value 1)  
Former heading  
Variant name  
Former name  
Class here  
Definition  
Scope  
General aspects

Footnote symbols are omitted, and the instructions to which they refer are converted to the appropriate note.

---

## 681 Classification Example Tracing Note (R)

### First Indicator

Undefined

␣ Undefined

### Second Indicator

Undefined

␣ Undefined

### Subfield Codes

⊕a Classification number—single number or beginning number of span (R)

⊕c Classification number—ending number of span (R)

⊕i Explanatory text (R)

⊕z Table identification (R)

⊕6 Linkage (NR)

⊕8 Field link and sequence number (R)

## FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a note that documents the use of the classification number in field 153 (Classification Number) of the record as an example or reference in the 253 Complex See Reference, 353 Complex See Also Reference and/or 6XX note fields of another record. It permits the updating of the 253, 353, or 6XX fields in the related record when a change is made to a 153 field. The information in this field is primarily intended to serve as a tracing of the use of classification numbers in examples and notes to assist classifiers in updating records. It is often not written in a form adequate for public user display.

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

### ■ INDICATORS

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (␣)

### ■ SUBFIELD CODES

#### ⊕a - Classification number—single number or beginning number of span

Subfield ⊕a contains the classification number in field 153 of the record in which the classification number is cited. The classification number may be a single number or the beginning number of a span.

#### ⊕c - Classification number—ending number of span

Subfield ⊕c contains the ending number of a classification number span from field 153 of the other record in which the classification number is cited.

#### ⊕i - Explanatory text

Subfield ⊕i contains text such as *Example under [...]*, and *Confer from [...]* that indicates how the classification number is used in the record for the classification number referred to in subfield ⊕a.

### ‡ z - Table identification

Subfield ‡z contains the identification of the table to which the classification number in the note belongs, if the classification number recorded in field 681 is part of a table. For a classification number span, subfield ‡z is given only once, before the first number.

### ‡ 6 - Linkage

### ‡ 8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of these subfields in Appendix A.

## ■ EXAMPLES

084 0b ‡ alcc *[Library of Congress Classification]*

153 bb ‡ aHB1321 ‡ cHB1528 ‡ hEconomic theory. Demography ‡ hDemography. Population. Vital events ‡ jDeaths. Mortality

681 bb ‡ iExample under ‡ aHB848 ‡ cHB3697 ‡ iDemography. Population. Vital events

084 0b ‡ alcc *[Library of Congress Classification]*

153 bb ‡ aHB848 ‡ cHB3697 ‡ hEconomic theory. Demography ‡ jDemography. Population. Vital events

680 0b ‡ iIncluding statistical works on specific aspects of population and vital events, as for example, ‡ aHB1321 ‡ cHB1528 ‡ iMortality

084 0b ‡ alcc *[Library of Congress Classification]*

153 bb ‡ aKF6571 ‡ cKF6594 ‡ hUnited States (General) ‡ hPublic finance ‡ hNational revenue ‡ hParticular sources of revenue ‡ hTaxation ‡ hParticular taxes ‡ hOther taxes on capital and income ‡ jEstate, inheritance, and gift taxes

681 bb ‡ iExample under ‡ aKF6296 ‡ cKF6297.5 ‡ iTax saving. Tax planning

084 0b ‡ alcc *[Library of Congress Classification]*

153 bb ‡ aKF6296 ‡ cKF6297.5 ‡ hUnited States (General) ‡ hPublic finance ‡ hNational revenue ‡ hParticular sources of revenue ‡ hTaxation ‡ jTax saving. Tax planning

253 0b ‡ iTax planning relating to particular taxes, except income tax, see these taxes, e.g. ‡ aKF6571 ‡ ‡ iEstate and gift taxes

*[The reference note in field 253 does not refer specifically to another number and cannot be made into a tracing.]*

084 0b ‡ alcc *[Library of Congress Classification]*

153 bb ‡ zG1 ‡ a.E645 ‡ hSubject subdivisions ‡ hHuman and Cultural Geography. Anthropogeography. Human Ecology ‡ hSocial and cultural geography. Civilizations ‡ hIntellectual and aesthetic life. The arts ‡ jTheaters. Drama. Motion pictures

681 bb ‡ iExample under ‡ zG1 ‡ a.A85 ‡ iBiographical maps. Maps showing travels of individuals

084 0b ‡ alcc *[Library of Congress Classification]*

153 bb ‡ zG1 ‡ a.A85 ‡ hSubject subdivisions ‡ hSpecial category Maps and Atlases ‡ jBiographical maps. Maps showing travels of individuals

680 0b ‡ iClass maps showing special groups of people under the subject, e.g., actors are classified in .E645



## SCHEME-SPECIFIC CONVENTIONS

**Dewey Decimal Classification** - This field is not used because the *DDC* uses field 765 (Synthesized Number Components), to track the use of classification numbers within synthesized numbers.

---





## 683 Application Instruction Note (R)

### First Indicator

#### Type of note

- 0 General application
- 1 Special arrangement of classification topics
- 2 Optional classification

### Second Indicator

#### Undefined

- b Undefined

### Subfield Codes

- |    |   |    |  |
|----|---|----|--|
| ⊕a | Classification number—single number or beginning number of span (R) | ⊕p | Corresponding classification field (R) |
| ⊕c | Classification number—ending number of span (R)                     | ⊕z | Table identification (R)               |
| ⊕i | Explanatory text (R)  | ⊕5 | Institution to which field applies (R) |
|    |   | ⊕6 | Linkage (NR)                           |
|    |   | ⊕8 | Field link and sequence number (NR)    |

## FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a note that gives instructions on applying tables, subarrangements, or additions to classification numbers. A separate 683 field is used when different types of notes are recorded or when the note only applies to certain institutions that are identified in subfield ⊕5 (Institution to which field applies). The information in this field is primarily intended to guide classifiers and is often not written in a form adequate for public user display.

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

### ■ INDICATORS

#### First Indicator - Type of note

The first indicator position contains a value that specifies the type of application instruction note.

#### 0 - General application

Value 0 indicates that the note contains general instructions on the application of the classification number, and the note does not fall into one of the categories represented by one of the other defined values.

084 0b ⊕ addc ⊕ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ⊕ a780 ⊕ hThe arts. Fine and decorative arts ⊕ jMusic

683 0b ⊕ iln building numbers, do not add by use of 0 or 1 (alone or in combination) more than twice, e.g., history of rock protest songs ⊕ a782.421661592 ⊕ i (not ⊕ a782.42166159209)

084 0b ≠ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ≠ aN6370 ≠ cN6494 ≠ hVisual arts ≠ hHistory ≠ hModern art ≠ jBy century

683 0b ≠ iUnder each century is provided a "General" number followed by a number for "Special aspects or movements." The latter is used for historical movements, etc. that are considered international

### 1 - Special arrangement of classification topics

Value 1 indicates that the note contains information about the special arrangement of topics within a classification number or span, for instance alphabetical or chronological.

084 0b ≠ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ≠ aPQ4367.A7 ≠ cPQ4367.Z ≠ hItalian literature ≠ hIndividual authors ≠ hIndividual authors and works to 1400 ≠ hDante Alighieri, 1265-1321 ≠ hBiography and criticism ≠ aBiography ≠ hPortraits ≠ jSpecial portraits. By artist, A-Z

683 1b ≠ iArrange alphabetically by name of artist

### 2 - Optional classification

Value 2 indicates that the note contains information about the application of optional classification numbers. A record for an optional classification number is indicated in 008/09 (Standard or optional designation), code b (optional).

008/09 b [Optional classification number]

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a789 ≠ hThe arts. Fine and decorative arts ≠ hMusic ≠ jComposers and traditions of music

683 2b ≠ iOptional number and subdivisions; prefer ≠ a780 ≠ c788

### Second Indicator - Undefined

The second indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (b).

### ■ SUBFIELD CODES

#### ≠ a - Classification number-single number or beginning number of span

Subfield ≠ a contains a single classification number or the beginning number of a span that is part of the instruction note.

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a973.56 ≠ hGeography, history, and auxiliary disciplines ≠ kHistory of ancient world; of specific continents, countries, localities; of extraterrestrial worlds ≠ kGeneral history of modern world, of extraterrestrial worlds ≠ hGeneral history of North America ≠ kCountries and localities ≠ hUnited States ≠ h1809-1845 ≠ jAdministration of Andrew Jackson, 1829-1837

680 0b ≠ 81.1 ≠ iIncluding Black Hawk War, 1832

683 2b ≠ 81.2 ≠ i(Option: Class Black Hawk War in ≠ a970.5) ≠ p253

#### ≠ c - Classification number-ending number of span

Subfield ≠ c contains the ending number of a classification number span that is part of the instruction note.

- 084 0b # addc # c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb # a420 # c490 # hLanguage # jSpecific languages  
 683 2b # i(Option: For any group of languages, add notation # z4 # a04 # ito the base number and then add notation # z4 # a01 # c8 # ifrom Table 4, e.g., grammar of Celtic languages # a491.6045) # p761

#### # i - Explanatory text

Subfield # i contains text of the application instruction note.

- 084 0b # alcc [Library of Congress Classification]  
 153 bb # aKJA798 # cKJA994 # hRoman law # hSources # hBy period # hPre-Justinian periods. Fontes antejustiniani # hIndividual sources and groups of sources # hJurists' law. Jus # jIndividual jurists or titles  
 683 1b # iIndividual jurists and titles are interfiled and arranged alphabetically

#### # p - Corresponding classification field

For optional instruction notes (first indicator is coded 2), subfield # p contains the tag of the field in which the data would appear if it were not an option. This subfield allows for an easier conversion from an optional instruction to the standard instruction. If it cannot be determined which field the data would fall into if it were not part of an optional instruction, this subfield may be omitted. If the data is a reference and can be recorded in field 253 (Complex See Reference) or 453 (Invalid Number Tracing), the choice of which tag to use in subfield # p is made according to how the text reads, not how it might read if it were made into a tracing. For example, "do not use; class in" would be in field 253 as it now appears. If the data could be recorded in either field 153 or 253/353, choose 153.

- 008/09 b [Optional classification number]  
 084 0b # addc # c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb # a789.1 # hThe arts. Fine and decorative arts # hMusic # hComposers and traditions of music # jGeneral principles of traditions of music  
 683 2b # i(If Option A is used with either Option B or C, class here comprehensive works on traditions of music) # p680  
 [If this number were not optional, the note would be in field 680 (Scope Note).]

#### # z - Table identification

Subfield # z contains the identification of the table to which a classification number recorded in field 683 belongs, if the classification number is part of a table. For a classification number span, subfield # z is given only once, before the first number.

- 084 0b # alcc [Library of Congress Classification]  
 153 bb # zN1 # a75.7.A12 # c75.7.Z # hTables of regions or countries (100 numbers) # hAsia. The Orient # hCentral Asia # jRussia in Asia  
 683 0b # ifor Russia in Asia as a whole, use the numbers provided for Central Asia: for Siberia use local numbers of the R.S.F.S.R., e.g. # zN1 # a56 # 1etc.  
 084 0b # addc # c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb # a420 # c490 # hLanguage # jSpecific languages  
 683 2b # i(Option: For any group of languages, add notation # z4 # a04 # ito the base number and then add notation # z4 # a01 # c8 # ifrom Table 4, e.g., grammar of Celtic languages # a491.6045) # p761



‡ 5 - Institution to which field applies

‡ 6 - Linkage

‡ 8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of these subfields in Appendix A.

## SCHEME-SPECIFIC CONVENTIONS

**Library of Congress Classification** - All application instruction notes in *LCC* contain a first indicator value of 0 (General application).

**Dewey Decimal Classification** - All option notes in *DDC* are recorded in field 683, even though they would be recorded in a different field if not optional except for optional notes and numbers in internal subarrangement or add table entries (field 763).

153 **bb** ‡ z2 ‡ a32 ‡ hGeographic Areas, Historical Periods, Persons ‡ kSpecific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds ‡ hThe ancient world ‡ jEgypt

**683 2b** ‡ i(Option: Class Egypt in ‡ z2 ‡ a62; ‡ iAlexandria in ‡ z2 ‡ a621; ‡ iGiza, Memphis in ‡ z2 ‡ a622; ‡ iAbydos, Karnak, Luxor, Thebes in ‡ z2 ‡ a623) ‡ p253

*[If this were not an option note, the note as now written would either be in 253 (Complex See Reference), or rewritten as four separate class elsewhere references in field 553.]*

**Punctuation and Spacing** - Punctuation and spacing are matters of judgment.

## 684 Auxiliary Instruction Note (R)

### First Indicator

Type of note

- 0 Source entry
- 1 Textual note
- 2 Reference note

### Second Indicator

Undefined

Undefined

### Subfield Codes

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| ⊕ a Classification number--single number or beginning number of span (R) | ⊕ j Caption (NR)                           |
| ⊕ c Classification number--ending number of span (R)                     | ⊕ z Table identification (R)               |
| ⊕ i Explanatory text (R)   | ⊕ 5 Institution to which field applies (R) |
|  | ⊕ 6 Linkage (NR)                           |
|  | ⊕ 8 Field link and sequence number (NR)    |

## FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a note which gives information from, or a reference to, a section of a classifier's manual or other documentation. An auxiliary instruction note provides advice for classifying in difficult areas, and describes policies and practices that may accompany a classification schedule. Examples of auxiliary instructions may be found in the *Dewey Decimal Classification* manual or other documentation intended to be used with a classification schedule. A separate 684 note is used when different types of notes are recorded, identified by the first indicator. The information in this field is primarily intended to guide classifiers and is often not written in a form adequate for public user display.

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

### ■ INDICATORS

#### First Indicator - Type of note

The first indicator position contains a value that specifies whether the note contains textual information from, or a reference to, auxiliary instructions.

#### 0 - Source entry

Value 0 indicates that the note contains information that appears in the entry itself and consists of a classification number and its corresponding caption.

#### 1 - Textual note

Value 1 indicates that the note contains the text of the note that appears in the source of the auxiliary instructions.

#### 2 - Reference note

Value 2 indicates that the note contains a reference from one section of the auxiliary instructions to another section or from the schedule or a table to a section of the instructions.

**Second Indicator - Undefined**

The second indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (b).

**■ SUBFIELD CODES****≠ a - Classification number—single number or beginning number of span**

Subfield ≠a contains a single classification number or the beginning number of a span that is part of the note. This number may be a classification number in the entry itself, the number of the auxiliary instruction section referred to in a reference note, or a number referred to in a textual note.

**≠ c - Classification number—ending number of span**

Subfield ≠c contains the ending number of a classification number span that is part of the note.

**≠ i - Explanatory text**

Subfield ≠i contains the text of the Auxiliary Instruction Note.

**≠ j - Caption**

Subfield ≠j contains a classification number caption that applies to the auxiliary instruction note. This caption indicates the scope of the note more accurately than the caption in subfield ≠j (Caption) of field 153 (Classification Number). Subfield ≠j is also used for topics that are separated from the rest of the note, especially in a list of topics and numbers associated with them.

**≠ z - Table identification**

Subfield ≠z contains the identification of the table to which the classification number in the note belongs, if the classification number recorded in field 684 is part of a table. For a classification number span, subfield ≠z is given only once, before the first number.

**≠ 5 - Institution to which field applies****≠ 6 - Linkage****≠ 8 - Field link and sequence number**

See description of these subfields in Appendix A.

**■ EXAMPLES**Example 1

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a395 ≠ hSocial sciences ≠ hCustoms, etiquette, folklore ≠ jEtiquette (Manners)

684 0b ≠ a395 ≠ jEtiquette (Manners)

684 1b ≠ iEtiquette includes prescriptive works on rules of conduct designed to make life pleasanter and more seemly and to eliminate causes of friction in the numerous minor opportunities for conflict or offense in daily life. More important matters of conduct are classed in ≠ a170 ≠ iEthics.

*Display example:*

395

**Etiquette (Manners)**

Etiquette includes prescriptive works on rules of conduct designed to make life pleasanter and more seemly and to eliminate causes of friction in the numerous minor opportunities for conflict or offense in daily life. More important matters of conduct are classed in 170 Ethics.

**Example 2**

- 084 0b + addc + c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]
- 153 bb + a338.1749 + aSocial sciences + hEconomics + hProduction + kSpecific kinds of industries + kPrimary (Extractive) industries + hAgriculture + hProducts + hOrchards, fruits, forestry + jProducts of forestry
- 684 0b + a338.1749 + ivs. + a333.75 + jProducts of forestry vs. Forest lands
- 684 1b + 81.1 + iSeveral of the concepts provided at + a333.75 + i by virtue of the add table under + a333.7 + ipotentially conflict with concepts provided at + a338.1749. + iThe general distinction is that works classed in + a333.75 + iare primarily concerned with forest land and uncut timber as present and future resources, whereas works classed in + a338.1749 + iare primarily concerned with cut timber as a product to be sold. Class comprehensive works in + a338.1749.
- 684 1b + 82.1 + iUse of add table under + a333.7
- 684 1b + 82.2 + a11 + jReserves (Stock, Supply) + iClass in + a333.7511 + ithe supply of forest land and uncut timber, in + a338.17498 + ithe supply of cut timber.
- 684 1b + 82.3 + a12 + jRequirements (Need, Demand) + iClass in + a333.7512 + ithe demand for timber discussed in terms of its effect on the supply of forest land and uncut timber. Class in + a338.17498 + ithe demand for timber discussed in terms of how much timber will have to be cut in order to meet the demand.

*Display example:*

**338.1749 vs. 333.75**

### **Products of forestry vs. Forest lands**

Several of the concepts provided at 333.75 by virtue of the add table under 333.7 potentially conflict with concepts provided at 338.1749. The general distinction is that works classed in 333.75 are primarily concerned with forest land and uncut timber as present and future resources, whereas works classed in 338.1749 are primarily concerned with cut timber as a product to be sold. Class comprehensive works in 338.1749.

### **Use of add table under 333.7**

11

Reserves (Stock, Supply)

Class in 333.7511 the supply of forest land and uncut timber, in 338.17498 the supply of cut timber.

12

Requirements (Need, Demand)

Class in 333.7512 the demand for timber discussed in terms of its effect on the supply of forest land and uncut timber. Class in 338.17498 the demand for timber discussed in terms of how much timber will have to be cut in order to meet the demand.



Example 3

- 084 0b  $\neq$  addc  $\neq$  c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb  $\neq$  a331.8  $\neq$  hSocial sciences  $\neq$  hEconomics  $\neq$  kEconomics of labor, finance, land, energy  $\neq$  hLabor economics  $\neq$  jLabor unions (Trade unions), labor-management (collective) bargaining and disputes  
 684 0b  $\neq$  a331  $\neq$  ivs.  $\neq$  a331.8  $\neq$  jLabor economics vs. Labor unions (Trade unions), labor-management (collective) bargaining and disputes  
 684 1b  $\neq$  iIndustrial relations in the broad sense of all relations between management and individual employees or employee groups is classed in  $\neq$  a331.  $\neq$  iIndustrial relations in the narrow sense of relations between management and labor unions is classed in  $\neq$  a331.8.  $\neq$  iIf in doubt, prefer  $\neq$  a331.

*Display example:*

**331 vs. 331.8**

**Labor economics vs. Labor unions (Trade unions), labor-management (collective) bargaining and disputes**

Industrial relations in the broad sense of all relations between management and individual employees or employee groups is classed in 331. Industrial relations in the narrow sense of relations between management and labor unions is classed in 331.8. If in doubt, prefer 331.

Example 4

- 084 0b  $\neq$  addc  $\neq$  c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb  $\neq$  a200.92  $\neq$  hReligion  $\neq$  hHistorical, geographic, persons treatment [formerly also 291.09]  $\neq$  jPersons  
 684 0b  $\neq$  a200.92  $\neq$  iand  $\neq$  a291  $\neq$  c299  $\neq$  iPersons [associated with religion] and Comparative religion, Religions other than Christianity  
 684 1b  $\neq$  81.1  $\neq$  iPersons associated with the religions in  $\neq$  a292  $\neq$  c299  $\neq$  iare often identified with a number of religious functions and activities. A Hindu guru, for example, may be thought of as a theologian, a teacher, a missionary, or a clergyman. If a religious leader cannot be identified primarily with one function, activity, or sect, class his biography in the base number for the religion and add notation  $\neq$  z1  $\neq$  a092  $\neq$  ifrom Table 1. Class collected biography of persons from many religions who are not identified with one function or activity in  $\neq$  a200.922.  $\neq$  iFor persons associated with a specific religion, use a number that corresponds to the number given in the table below, e.g., a Buddhist member of a religious order  $\neq$  a294.365  $\neq$  i(corresponds to  $\neq$  a291.65  $\neq$  iin the table below). For comprehensive biographies of persons primarily identified with one function, activity, or sect, use the following table of preference:  
 684 1b  $\neq$  81.2  $\neq$  jFounders of religions  $\neq$  a291.63  
 684 1b  $\neq$  81.3  $\neq$  jFounders of sects  $\neq$  a291.9  
 684 1b  $\neq$  81.4  $\neq$  jFounders of religious orders  $\neq$  a291.65  
 684 1b  $\neq$  81.5  $\neq$  jReligious leaders (high ranking officials)  $\neq$  a200.92  
 684 1b  $\neq$  81.6  $\neq$  jOf specific sects  $\neq$  a291.9  
 684 1b  $\neq$  81.7  $\neq$  jTheologians  $\neq$  a291.2092  
 684 1b  $\neq$  81.8  $\neq$  jMoral theologians  $\neq$  a291.5092  
 684 1b  $\neq$  81.9  $\neq$  jMissionaries  $\neq$  a291.72092  
 684 1b  $\neq$  81.10  $\neq$  jMartyrs, heretics, saints  $\neq$  a200.92  
 684 1b  $\neq$  81.11  $\neq$  jOf specific sects  $\neq$  a291.9  
 684 1b  $\neq$  81.12  $\neq$  jTeachers  $\neq$  a291.75092  
 684 1b  $\neq$  81.13  $\neq$  jMembers of religious orders  $\neq$  a291.65  
 684 1b  $\neq$  81.14  $\neq$  jClergy  $\neq$  a200.92

**684 1b + 81.15 + jOf specific sects + a291.9**

*[This is a record for a built number using Table 1, Standard subdivisions.]*

*Display example:*

**200.92 and 291**

**Persons [associated with the religion] and Comparative religion, Religions other than Christianity**

Persons associated with the religions in 292-299 are often identified with a number of religious functions and activities. A Hindu guru, for example, may be thought of as a theologian, a teacher, a missionary, or a clergyman. If a religious leader cannot be identified primarily with one function, activity, or sect, class his biography in the base number for the religion and add notation 1 092 from Table 1. Class collected biography of persons from many religions who are not identified with one function or activity in 200.922. For persons associated with a specific religion, use a number that corresponds to the number given in the table below, e.g., a Buddhist member of a religious order 294.365 (corresponds to 291.65 in the table below). For comprehensive biographies of persons primarily identified with one function, activity, or sect, use the following table of preference:

Founders of religions	291.63
Founders of sects	291.9
Founders of religious orders	291.65
Religious leaders (high ranking officials)	200.92
Of specific sects	291.9
Theologians	291.2092
Moral theologians	291.5092
Missionaries	291.72092
Martyrs, heretics, saints	200.92
Of specific sects	291.9
Teachers	291.75092
Members of religious orders	291.65
Clergy	200.92
Of specific sects	291.9

---

**SCHEME-SPECIFIC CONVENTIONS**

**Dewey Decimal Classification** - The note that contains the auxiliary instruction caption (First indicator, value 0 (Source entry)) is input before the note containing the textual instruction (First indicator, value 1 (Textual note)).

---



## 685 History Note (R)

### First Indicator

#### Result of change

- 0 Completely new number
- 1 Completely vacated number
- 2 Partially changed number
- 3 Reused after being vacated
- 4 Immediately reused
- 8 Other

### Second Indicator

#### Type of history information

- 0 Relocation
- 1 Formerly
- 2 Discontinuation
- 3 Expansion
- 8 Other

### Subfield Codes

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| ≠a New number—single number or beginning number of span (R)      | ≠f Title and publication date (NR)        |
| ≠b Previous number—single number or beginning number of span (R) | ≠i Explanatory text (R)                   |
| ≠c Classification number—ending number of span (R)               | ≠t Topic (R)                              |
| ≠d Date of implementation of authoritative agency (NR)           | ≠z Table identification (R)               |
| ≠e Local implementation date (NR)                                | ≠2 Edition number (R)                     |
|  | ≠5 Institution to which field applies (R) |
|  | ≠6 Linkage (NR)                           |
|  | ≠8 Field link and sequence number (NR)    |

## FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains information about the history of the use and meaning of a classification number. The history information contained in this field refers to the number in field 153 (Classification Number) of the classification record unless a 453 (Invalid Number Tracing) or 553 (Valid Number Tracing) field contains code a (History reference, field 685 used) in control subfield ≠w/3 (History reference). If the tracing contains code a in subfield ≠w/3, the history reference refers to the number in that field. If there are two tracings in the record both with code a in subfield ≠w/3, the number in subfield ≠a or ≠b identifies to which tracing the history note refers. The information in this field is intended primarily for computer processing or to guide classifiers and is often not written in a form adequate for public user display.

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

### ■ INDICATORS

#### First Indicator - Result of change

The first indicator position contains a value that indicates the result of the change recorded in field 685 to the meaning of the number in field 153, 453, or 553.

#### 0 - Completely new number

Value 0 indicates that the classification number has not been used in any previous edition.



084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb ≠ a006.7 ≠ hGeneralities ≠ hSpecial computer methods ≠ jMultimedia systems  
 685 01 ≠ tMultimedia systems, interactive video, comprehensive works on computer graphics and computer sound synthesis ≠ iall formerly located in ≠ a006.6 ≠ d 19960930 ≠ 221

#### 1 - Completely vacated number

Value 1 indicates that the classification number in field 153 (Classification Number) has ceased being used or that the 685 field is linked to a 453 (Invalid Number Tracing) field with code a (Previous classification number) in control subfield ≠ w/O (Special relationship).

008/08 d [completely invalid]

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a297.19 ≠ hReligion ≠ hComparative religion and religions other than Christianity ≠ kReligions other than Christianity ≠ hIslam, Babism, Bahai Faith ≠ kIslam ≠ kSources of Islam; Islamic doctrinal theology (Āqāid and Kalām); Islam and secular disciplines; Islam and other systems of belief; Islamic worship ≠ hSources of Islam ≠ j Mythology  
 685 12 ≠ iProvision discontinued because without meaning in context ≠ d19960930 ≠ 2 21

*[A record is created for this invalid number to give the discontinuation information, because there is no other number in which to include it as a tracing.]*

#### 2 - Partially changed number

Value 2 indicates that the meaning of the classification number has been partly changed by the addition or subtraction of a topic.

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a158.5 ≠ hPhilosophy, paranormal phenomena, psychology ≠ hPsychology ≠ k Specific topics in psychology ≠ hApplied psychology ≠ jNegotiation

685 22 ≠ iUse of this number for ≠ tcooperation ≠ idiscontinued; class in ≠ a158 ≠ d 19960930 ≠ 221

*[The record for 158 contains a tracing for 158.5 that is coded a (Previous classification number) in control subfield ≠ w/O.]*

#### 3 - Reused after being vacated

Value 3 indicates that the classification number has been reused after being vacated for at least one edition.

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ z1 ≠ a081 ≠ hStandard Subdivisions ≠ hHistory and description with respect to kinds of persons ≠ jMen

453 1b ≠ wanaa ≠ z1 ≠ a088041 ≠ hStandard subdivisions ≠ hHistory and description with respect to kinds of persons ≠ jMen

685 10 ≠ tCritical appraisal of a person's work ≠ irelocated to ≠ z1 ≠ a092 ≠ d19650501 ≠ 217

685 31 ≠ tMen ≠ iformerly located in ≠ z1 ≠ b088041 ≠ d19890306 ≠ 220  
*[088041 is now an invalid number.]*

#### 4 - Immediately reused

Value 4 indicates that the meaning of the classification number has completely changed, without any intervening period of nonuse.

- 084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb ‡ a439.1 ‡ hLanguage ‡ kSpecific languages ‡ kSpecific Indo-European languages ‡ hGermanic (Teutonic) languages. German ‡ hOther Germanic (Teutonic) languages ‡ jYiddish  
 553 0b ‡ wanna ‡ a437.947 ‡ hLanguage ‡ kSpecific languages ‡ kSpecific Indo-European languages ‡ hGermanic (Teutonic) languages. German ‡ kSubdivisions of German language ‡ hHistorical and geographic variations, modern nongeographic variations ‡ hGeographic variations in other places ‡ jYiddish  
 685 41 ‡ tYiddish ‡ iformerly located in ‡ b437.947 ‡ d19960930 ‡ 221  
 685 42 ‡ iUse of this number for ‡ tcomprehensive works on Old Low Germanic languages ‡ idiscontinued; class in ‡ a439 ‡ d19960930 ‡ 221  
 685 40 ‡ tOld Frisian ‡ irelocated to ‡ a439.2 ‡ d19960930 ‡ 221  
 685 40 ‡ tOld Low Franconian ‡ irelocated to ‡ a439.31 ‡ d19960930 ‡ 221  
 685 40 ‡ tOld Low German, Old Saxon ‡ irelocated to ‡ a439.4 ‡ d19960930 ‡ 221  
 [The record for 439.4 contains a tracing for 439.1]

## 8 - Other

Value 8 indicates that the field gives information about a change other than that specified by one of the other defined values.

- 084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb ‡ a370 ‡ hSocial sciences ‡ jEducation  
 685 88 ‡ iThis schedule is extensively revised, 370.1, 370.7, 375-377, and 378.14-378.19 in particular departing from earlier editions. A comparative table giving both old and new numbers for relocated topics, and equivalence tables showing the numbers in the old and new schedules appear in volume 1 of this edition ‡ d19960930 ‡ 221

## Second Indicator - Type of history information

The second indicator contains a value that indicates the type of history information note recorded in field 685.

### 0 - Relocation

Value 0 indicates that a specific topic has been shifted from the number in field 153 to another number. This situation usually involves shifting from one hierarchy to another.

- 084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb ‡ a307.2 ‡ hSocial sciences ‡ kSpecific topics in sociology and anthropology ‡ hCommunities ‡ kSpecific aspects of communities ‡ jMovement of people to, from, within communities  
 685 20 ‡ tPopulation size and composition ‡ irelocated to ‡ a304.6 ‡ d19960930 ‡ 221  
 [The record for 304.6 contains a tracing for 307.2 that is coded a (Previous classification number) in control subfield ‡ w/0.]

### 1 - Formerly

Value 1 indicates that a specific topic has been shifted to the number in field 153 from another number. This situation usually involves shifting from one hierarchy to another.

- 084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb ≠ a304.6 ≠ hSocial sciences ≠ kSpecific topics in sociology and anthropology ≠ h  
 Factors affecting social behavior ≠ jPopulation  
 553 0b ≠ wanna ≠ a307.2 ≠ hSocial sciences ≠ kSpecific topics in sociology and  
 anthropology ≠ hCommunities ≠ kSpecific aspects of communities ≠ jMovement of  
 people to, from, within communities  
**685** 21 ≠ tPopulation size and composition ≠ iboth formerly also located in ≠ a307.2 ≠ d  
 19960930 ≠ 221  
 [Field 553 contains code a in control subfield ≠ w/3 (History reference) to indicate that  
 field 685 refers to the number in that tracing.]

## 2 - Discontinuation

Value 2 indicates that a topic has been moved to a shorter number in the same hierarchy, or that the topic has been dropped entirely, usually because it is obsolete or without meaning in context.

- 084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb ≠ a152.182 ≠ hPhilosophy, paranormal phenomena, psychology ≠ hPsychology ≠ k  
 Specific topics in psychology ≠ hSensory perception, movement, emotions,  
 physiological drives ≠ hSensory perception ≠ hOther types of sensory perception ≠ j  
 Cutaneous (Tactile) perception  
 453 0b ≠ wanna ≠ a152.1828 ≠ hPhilosophy, paranormal phenomena, psychology ≠ h  
 Psychology ≠ kSpecific topics in psychology ≠ hSensory perception, movement,  
 emotions, physiological drives ≠ hSensory perception ≠ hOther types of sensory  
 perception ≠ hCutaneous (Tactile) perception ≠ jItch and tickle  
**685** 12 ≠ iNumber discontinued; class in ≠ a152.182 ≠ b152.1828 ≠ d19960930 ≠ 221  
 [Field 453 contains code a in control subfield ≠ w/3 (History reference) to indicate that  
 the 685 field refers to the number in that tracing.]

## 3 - Expansion

Value 3 indicates that the topic has been moved to a longer number in the same hierarchy.

- 084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb ≠ a796.32 ≠ hThe arts. Fine and decorative arts ≠ hRecreational and performing  
 arts ≠ hAthletic and outdoor sports and games ≠ hBall games ≠ jInflated ball thrown  
 or hit by hand  
**685** 23 ≠ a796.324 ≠ tNetball ≠ d19960930 ≠ 221  
 084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb ≠ a796.324 ≠ hThe arts. Fine and decorative arts ≠ hRecreational and performing  
 arts ≠ hAthletic and outdoor sports and games ≠ hBall games ≠ hInflated ball thrown  
 or hit by hand ≠ jNetball  
**685** 03 ≠ iExpanded from ≠ a796.324 ≠ tNetball ≠ d19960930 ≠ 221

## 8 - Other

Value 8 indicates that this field gives information about a type of change other than that specified by one of the other defined values.



- 084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb ≠ a350 ≠ hSocial sciences ≠ kPublic administration and military science  
 685 88 ≠ iExcept for military science (355-359), this schedule is new and has been prepared with little or no reference to previous editions. Most numbers have been reused with new meanings. A comparative table giving both old and new numbers for a substantial list of topics and equivalence tables showing the numbers in the old and new schedules appear in volume 1 of this edition ≠ d19960930 ≠ 221

## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

### ≠ a - New number—single number or beginning number of span

Subfield ≠ a contains the new number to which a topic has been moved. If the new number is the same as the number in field 153 (Classification Number), this subfield is not used. The presence of this subfield signals that the topic is being moved away from the classification number in field 153. The record for the new number generally contains a tracing for the number from which the topic was moved.

- 084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb ≠ a160 ≠ hPhilosophy, paranormal phenomena, psychology ≠ jLogic  
 685 20 ≠ tReference ≠ irelocated to ≠ a121.68 ≠ d19960930 ≠ 221

### ≠ b - Previous number—single number or beginning number of span

Subfield ≠ b contains the old number from which the topic has been moved. If the old number is the same as the number in field 153, field 453 (Invalid Number Tracing) or field 553 (Valid Number Tracing), this subfield is not used. The presence of this subfield signals that the topic is being moved into the number in field 153. This record generally contains a tracing for the previous number.

- 084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb ≠ a121.68 ≠ hPhilosophy, paranormal phenomena, psychology ≠ hEpistemology, causation, humankind ≠ hEpistemology (Theory of knowledge) ≠ hNature of inquiry ≠ jMeaning, interpretation, hermeneutics  
 685 21 ≠ tReference ≠ iformerly located in ≠ b160 ≠ d19960930 ≠ 221

### ≠ c - Classification number—ending number of span

Subfield ≠ c contains the ending number of a classification number span cited in field 685. The beginning number of the span is recorded either in subfield ≠ a for new number or subfield ≠ b for previous number.

- 084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb ≠ a296.43 ≠ c296.44 ≠ hReligion ≠ hComparative religion and religions other than Christianity ≠ kReligions other than Christianity ≠ hJudaism ≠ hTraditions, rites, public services ≠ jFestivals, holy days, fasts; rites and customs for occasions that occur generally once in a lifetime  
 685 20 ≠ tLiturgy and prayers for festivals, holy days, fasts; for occasions that occur generally once in a lifetime ≠ irelocated to ≠ a296.453 ≠ c296.454 ≠ d19960930 ≠ 221

### ≠ d - Date of implementation at authoritative agency

Subfield ≠ d contains the date on which the authoritative agency implemented the change recorded in field 685.



084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb ‡ a305.235 ‡ hSocial Sciences ‡ kSpecific topics in sociology and anthropology ‡ h  
 Social groups ‡ hAge groups ‡ hYoung people ‡ jYoung people twelve to twenty  
 685 20 ‡ tComprehensive works on young adults ‡ irelocated to ‡ a305.242 ‡ d19960930  
 ‡ 221

‡ e - Local implementation date

Subfield ‡ e contains the date on which the local library implemented the change recorded in field 685.

‡ f - Title and publication date

Subfield ‡ f contains a code or a title and publication date string to identify the source where the classification number change first appeared if the change occurred in other than a published edition identified in subfield ‡ 2 (Edition number). The field also may contain a volume and number if appropriate, following the title and publication date or coded data.

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb ‡ a004 ‡ hGeneralities ‡ jData processing. Computer science  
 685 01 ‡ tData processing. Computer science ‡ iformerly located  
 in ‡ b001.6 ‡ d19850501 ‡ fDDC 004-006, data processing and computer science  
 and changes in related disciplines, 1985 ‡ 219

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb ‡ a303.323 ‡ hSocial sciences ‡ kSpecific topics in sociology and anthropology  
 ‡ hSocial processes ‡ hCoordination and control ‡ hSocialization ‡ jBy the family  
 685 03 ‡ tSocialization by the family ‡ d19820315 ‡ fDDC 301-307, sociology,  
 1982 ‡ 219

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb ‡ a530.1433 ‡ hNatural sciences and mathematics ‡ hPhysics ‡ hTheories and  
 mathematical physics ‡ hField and wave theories ‡ hQuantum field theory ‡ jQuantum  
 electrodynamics  
 685 01 ‡ tQuantum electrodynamics ‡ iformerly located in ‡ b537.67 ‡ d19990901 ‡ fNew  
 and Changed Entries, September 1999 ‡ 221

‡ i - Explanatory text

Subfield ‡ i contains the explanatory text in field 685.

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb ‡ a158.5 ‡ hPhilosophy, paranormal phenomena, psychology ‡ hPsychology ‡ k  
 Specific topics in psychology ‡ hApplied psychology ‡ jNegotiation  
 685 22 ‡ iUse of this number for cooperation discontinued; class in ‡ a158 ‡ d19960930  
 ‡ 221

‡ t - Topic

Subfield ‡ t contains the topic that is being added to or subtracted from the meaning of the number in field 153, 453 or 553 of this or another record.

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb ‡ a307.2 ‡ hSocial sciences ‡ kSpecific topics in sociology and anthropology ‡ ah  
 Communities ‡ kSpecific aspects of communities ‡ jMovement of people to, from,  
 within communities  
 685 20 ‡ tPopulation size and composition ‡ irelocated to ‡ a304.6 ‡ d19960930 ‡ 221

### ≠ z - Table identification

Subfield ≠ z contains the identification of the table to which a classification number recorded in field 685 belongs, if the classification number is part of a table. For a classification number span, subfield ≠ z is given only once, before the first number.

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ z2 ≠ a5129 ≠ hGeographic Areas, Historical Periods, Persons ≠ kSpecific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds ≠ kThe modern world; extraterrestrial worlds ≠ hAsia. Orient. Far East ≠ hChina and adjacent areas ≠ hSoutheastern China and adjacent areas ≠ jHainan Province (Hainan Sheng)

685 01 ≠ tHainan Province (Hainan Sheng) ≠ iformerly located in ≠ z2 ≠ b5127 ≠ d19910501 ≠ 220

### ≠ 2 - Edition number

Subfield ≠ 2 contains the edition number of the classification scheme in which the change recorded in field 685 occurred.

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a160 ≠ hPhilosophy, paranormal phenomena, psychology ≠ jLogic

685 20 ≠ tReference ≠ irelocated to ≠ a121.68 ≠ d19960930 ≠ 221

### ≠ 5 - Institution to which field applies

### ≠ 6 - Linkage

### ≠ 8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of these subfields in Appendix A.

## SCHEME-SPECIFIC CONVENTIONS

**Dewey Decimal Classification** - Formerly notes are the other ends of relocation notes. In the printed version they are embedded in captions or in other notes rather than being a separate note.

Subfield ≠ d (Date of implementation of authoritative-agency) and subfield ≠ 2 (Edition number) are applicable only to the standard full English language edition of the *DDC*.

Examples of the use of subfield ≠ f (Title and publication date) are the *DC&: Decimal Classification Additions, Notes and Decisions*, small schedules that are issued separately in advance of the publication of a new edition, or on the "New and Changed Entries" page of the OCLC Forest Press's website (<http://www.oclc.org/oclc/fp/ddc/newnchnng.htm>).



## 686 Relationship to Source Note (R)

### First Indicator

Type of relationship

- 0 Number from other source edition
- 1 Expansion
- 2 Option
- 3 Adaption, other

### Second Indicator

Undefined

- b Undefined

### Subfield Codes

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>‡ a Number in edition described in field<br/>084--single number or beginning<br/>number of span (R)</li> <li>‡ b Number in primary source edition--single<br/>number or beginning number of span (R)</li> <li>‡ c Ending number of span (R)</li> <li>‡ i Explanatory text (R)</li> <li>‡ o Number where instructions are<br/>found--single number or beginning<br/>number of span (R)</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>‡ t Topic (R)</li> <li>‡ z Table identification (R)</li> <li>‡ 2 Edition identifier (R)</li> <li>‡ 5 Institution to which field applies (R)</li> <li>‡ 6 Linkage (NR)</li> <li>‡ 8 Field link and sequence number (NR)</li> </ul> |
|---|--|

## FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains information about the relationship of a number to the source edition when the number is different from the standard number for the same topic in the primary source edition. This field is used for numbers based on a source other than the primary source, expansions, implemented options, and adaptations. The information in this field is intended primarily for computer processing or to guide classifiers and is often not written in a form adequate for public user display.

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

### ■ INDICATORS

#### First Indicator - Type of relationship

The first indicator position contains a value that indicates the type of relationship between the number in the 153 field and the standard number for the same topic in the source edition.

#### 0 - Number from other source edition

Value 0 indicates that the classification number in field 153 is based on a source other than the primary source. If the classification number in field 153 is the implementation of an option described in the other source edition, use indicator value 2.

#### 1 - Expansion

Value 1 indicates that the classification number in field 153 represents a more specific number in the same hierarchy as the standard number in the primary source edition for the topic



identified in subfield  $\neq t$ . If this number is based on another source edition, use indicator value 0.

## 2 - Option

Value 2 indicates that the classification number in field 153 represents the implementation of an option described in the primary source or other source edition.

## 3 - Adaptation, other

Value 3 indicates that the classification number in field 153 is different from the number in the primary source edition for the topic identified in subfield  $\neq t$ , and none of the types of relationships described in the other indicator values is applicable.

## Second Indicator - Undefined

The second indicator position is undefined and contains a blank ( $\emptyset$ ).

## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

### $\neq a$ - Number in edition described in field 084--single number or beginning number of span

Subfield  $\neq a$  contains the number in the edition described in field 084 for the topic identified in subfield  $\neq t$ . Subfield  $\neq a$  is not used if it would be the same as the number in field 153.

### $\neq b$ - Number in primary source edition--single number or beginning number of span

Subfield  $\neq b$  contains the standard number in the primary source edition for the topic identified in subfield  $\neq t$ , or if there is no subfield  $\neq t$ , then in subfield  $\neq j$  of field 153. Subfield  $\neq b$  is not used if it would be the same as subfield  $\neq o$  (Number where instructions are found).

### $\neq c$ - Ending number of span

Subfield  $\neq c$  contains the ending number of a classification number span cited in field 686. The beginning number of the span is recorded in subfields  $\neq a$ ,  $\neq b$  or  $\neq o$ .

### $\neq i$ - Explanatory text

Subfield  $\neq i$  contains the explanatory text in field 686.

### $\neq o$ - Number where instructions are found--single number or beginning number of span

Subfield  $\neq o$  contains the number in the source edition where instructions are given for the option that is being implemented in the number in field 153. This subfield is used only for an option described in the primary source edition or another source edition (indicator value 2).

### $\neq t$ - Topic

Subfield  $\neq t$  contains the topic that is being added to or subtracted from the meaning of the number in field 153. Subfield  $\neq t$  is not used if it would be the same as subfield  $\neq j$  (Caption) in field 153.

### $\neq z$ - Table identification

Subfield  $\neq z$  contains the identification of the table to which a classification number recorded in field 686 belongs, if the classification number is part of a table. For a classification number span, subfield  $\neq z$  is given only once, before the first number.

### $\neq 2$ - Edition identifier

Subfield  $\neq 2$  contains the edition number, date, or other textual designation of the classification scheme edition used as the source for the classification number in field 153 when that source is not the primary source. This subfield is used with indicator value 0, and with indicator value 2 when the option is described in the other source edition. This subfield is not used to record

the edition identifier of the primary source edition; that edition identifier is recorded in subfield  $\neq$  c or  $\neq$  d of the 084 field.

$\neq$  5 - Institution to which field applies

$\neq$  6 - Linkage

$\neq$  8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of these subfields in Appendix A.

## ■ EXAMPLES

### *Number from other source edition:*

- 084 8b  $\neq$  addc  $\neq$  bSistema de Clasificación  $\neq$  c20  $\neq$  ncontains parts of edition 21 in revised Table 2 notation for former Soviet Union and Table 6 expansions for North and South American Languages  $\neq$  espa  
153 bb  $\neq$  z2  $\neq$  4771  $\neq$  hEuropa Europa Occidental  $\neq$  hEuropa oriental Rusia  $\neq$  hUcrania  $\neq$  jProvincia de Crimea  
686 0b  $\neq$  221

### *Expansion:*

- 084 8b  $\neq$  addc  $\neq$  bClassificazione Decimale Dewey  $\neq$  c20  $\neq$  eita  
153 bb  $\neq$  z2  $\neq$  a454126  $\neq$  hEuropa Europa occidentale  $\neq$  hPenisola italiana e isole adiacenti Italia  $\neq$  hRegione dell'Emilia-Romagna e San Marino  $\neq$  hProvincia di Bologna  $\neq$  hNordovest della provincia di Bologna  $\neq$  jCrevalcore  
686 1b  $\neq$  z2  $\neq$  b4541

### *Option:*

- 084 8b  $\neq$  addc  $\neq$  bClassificazione Decimale Dewey  $\neq$  c20  $\neq$  eita  
153 bb  $\neq$  a222.86  $\neq$  hReligione  $\neq$  hBibbia  $\neq$  hLibri storici dell'Antico Testamento  $\neq$  hNeemia (Esdra 2)  $\neq$  jTobia  
683 2b  $\neq$  i(Opzione: Classificare in  $\neq$  a229.22)  $\neq$  p253  
686 2b  $\neq$  o229.22  
  
084 8b  $\neq$  addc  $\neq$  bDewey Onlu Sınıflama ve Bağlantılı Dizin  $\neq$  c20  $\neq$  etur  
153 bb  $\neq$  a412  $\neq$  hDil ve dilbilim  $\neq$  hBelirli diller  $\neq$  hTürk dili  $\neq$  h  $\neq$  jStandart Türkçe'nin kökenbilimi (etimolojisi)  
686 2b  $\neq$  b494.352  $\neq$  o410

### *Adaptation, other:*

- 084 8b  $\neq$  addc  $\neq$  bDewey Onlu Sınıflama ve Bağlantılı Dizin  $\neq$  c20  $\neq$  etur  
153 bb  $\neq$  z2  $\neq$  a56226  $\neq$  hTablo: Coğrafi Alanlar, Tarihi Dönemler, Kişiler  $\neq$  hAsya Doğu (Orient) Uzakdoğu  $\neq$  hOrta Doğu (Yakin Doğu)  $\neq$  hEge Bölgesi (Batı Anadolu) ve Marmara Bölgesi  $\neq$  hMarmara Bölgesi  $\neq$  jİstanbul  
686 3b  $\neq$  tComprehensive works and European portion of Istanbul province  $\neq$  z2  $\neq$  b49618  
686 3b  $\neq$  tAsian portion of Istanbul province  $\neq$  z2  $\neq$  b563  
  
084 8b  $\neq$  addc  $\neq$  bClassificazione Decimale Dewey  $\neq$  c20  $\neq$  eita  
153 bb  $\neq$  a641.815  $\neq$  hTecnologia (Scienze applicate)  $\neq$  hEconomia domestica e vita familiare  $\neq$  hCibi e bevande (Alimenti)  $\neq$  hConservazione, immagazzinamento, cucina degli alimenti  $\neq$  hCucina di specifici tipi di piatti  $\neq$  hPiatti preliminari e di accompagnamento  $\neq$  jPane e affini  
680 1b  $\neq$  iEsempî: cialde, crackers, crêpes, focacce, panini, pizze, schiacciate  
686 3b  $\neq$  tPizza  $\neq$  b641.824

084 8b ≠ addc ≠ bClassificazione Decimale Dewey ≠ c20 ≠ eita  
153 bb ≠ a641.824 ≠ hTecnologia (Scienze applicate) ≠ hEconomia domestica e vita  
familiare ≠ hCibi e bevande (Alimenti) ≠ hConservazione, immagazzinamento, cucina  
degli alimenti ≠ hCucina di specifici tipi di piatti ≠ hPiatti principali ≠ jSformati di carne e  
torte di formaggio  
686 3b ≠ tPizza ≠ a641.815

---

#### SCHEME-SPECIFIC CONVENTIONS

Dewey Decimal Classification - Only longer numbers in the same hierarchy are expansions.

---







**70X-75X Index Term Fields--General Information**

- 700 Index Term--Personal Name (R)**
- 710 Index Term--Corporate Name (R)**
- 711 Index Term--Meeting Name (R)**
- 720 Index Term--Uncontrolled Name (R)**
- 730 Index Term--Uniform Title (R)**
- 750 Index Term--Topical (R)**
- 751 Index Term--Geographic Name (R)**
- 753 Index Term--Uncontrolled (R)**
- 754 Index Term--Faceted Topical Terms (R)**

---

**DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

The 70X-75X fields contain index terms that supplement terms contained in data in the MARC record. They are intended to provide subject access to the classification number in field 153 (Classification Number). Fields 700-751 contain established subject access terms from the subject heading systems and thesauri identified in the second indicator (Subject heading system/thesaurus) or in subfield  $\neq 2$  (Source of heading or term) and Field 754 contains a topical subject constructed from a faceted vocabulary. Field 753 (Index Term--Uncontrolled) contains uncontrolled index terms, which provide additional access terms, references between terms, and vocabulary control.

For fields 700-751 and 754, guidelines for applying content designators and input conventions are generally not provided in this document. These fields parallel the subject added entry fields, 600-651, and 654 in the bibliographic format. Complete guidelines for using these fields are provided in the *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*: fields X00-X30, 600-651, and 654.

---



# 700 Index Term–Personal Name (R)

## First Indicator

Type of personal name entry element

- 0 Forename
- 1 Surname
- 3 Family name

## Second Indicator

Thesaurus

- 0 Library of Congress Subject Headings/Name authority file
- 1 LC subject headings for children's literature
- 2 Medical Subject Headings/NLM name authority file
- 3 National Agricultural Library subject authority file
- 4 Source not specified
- 5 Canadian Subject Headings/NLC name authority file
- 6 Répertoire de vedettes-matière
- 7 Source specified in subfield ≠ 2

## Subfield Codes

### *Name portion*

- ≠a Personal name (NR)
- ≠q Fuller form of name (NR)
- ≠b Numeration (NR)
- ≠c Titles and other words associated with a name (R)
- ≠d Dates associated with a name (NR)
- ≠e Relator term (R)
- ≠j Attribution qualifier (R)

### *Title portion*

- ≠t Title of a work (NR)
- ≠f Date of a work (NR)
- ≠h Medium (NR)
- ≠k Form subheading (R)
- ≠l Language of a work (NR)
- ≠m Medium of performance for music (R)
- ≠n Number of part/section of a work (R)
- ≠o Arranged statement for music (NR)
- ≠p Name of part/section of a work (R)
- ≠r Key for music (NR)
- ≠s Version (NR)

### *Name and title portions*

- ≠g Miscellaneous information (NR)

### *Subject subdivision portion*

- ≠v Form subdivision (R)
- ≠x General subdivision (R)
- ≠y Chronological subdivision (R)
- ≠z Geographic subdivision (R)

### *Control subfields*

- ≠i Explanatory text (R)
- ≠0 Record control number (R)
- ≠2 Source of heading or term (NR)
- ≠3 Materials specified (NR)
- ≠4 Relator code (R)
- ≠6 Linkage (NR)
- ≠8 Field link and sequence number (R)



## FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a personal name or the personal name portion of a name/title field used as an index term that supplements terms derived in the MARC record. The name may be referred to in the classification number and caption in field 153 (Classification Number). The field may be used to link a classification number with a related controlled personal name heading. The values in the second indicator position or the data in subfield  $\neq 2$  (Source of heading or term) identify the subject heading system or thesaurus used by an institution to formulate the personal name index term. Terms not controlled by a thesaurus are contained in field 753 (Index Term–Uncontrolled).

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Guidelines for applying subfield  $\neq i$  (Explanatory text) and subfield  $\neq 0$  (Record control number) and examples of field 700 are provided in this section. Guidelines for applying the remaining content designators and input conventions are provided in the *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*: field X00 (Personal Names–General Information) and field 600 (Subject Added Entry–Personal Name).

## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

 $\neq i$  - Explanatory text

Subfield  $\neq i$  contains explanatory text associated with the index term.

 $\neq 0$  - Record control number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A.

## ■ EXAMPLES

084 0 $\neq$  alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153  $\neq$  aBX1378.5  $\neq$  hChristian denominations  $\neq$  hRoman Catholic Church  $\neq$  hHistory  $\neq$  hBy period  $\neq$  h1447-  $\neq$  hModern history  $\neq$  h1789-  $\neq$  hIndividual popes  $\neq$  jJohn Paul II, 1978-

700 00  $\neq$  aJohn Paul  $\neq$  bII,  $\neq$  cPope,  $\neq$  d1920-

084 0 $\neq$  alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153  $\neq$  aBS580.M6  $\neq$  hThe Bible  $\neq$  hGeneral  $\neq$  hWorks about the Bible  $\neq$  hMen, women and children of the Bible  $\neq$  hBiography  $\neq$  hIndividual Old Testament characters, A-Z  $\neq$  jMoses

700 00  $\neq$  aMoses  $\neq$  c(Biblical leader)  $\neq$  0(DLC) $\neq$  b79058331

084 0 $\neq$  alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153  $\neq$  aB765.T5  $\neq$  hPhilosophy (General)  $\neq$  hMedieval (430-1450)  $\neq$  hEuropean philosophers, A-Z  $\neq$  jThomas Aquinas

700 00  $\neq$  aThomas,  $\neq$  cAquinas, Saint,  $\neq$  d1225?-1274.

084 0 $\neq$  alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153  $\neq$  aPQ6322  $\neq$  cPQ6365  $\neq$  hSpanish literature  $\neq$  hIndividual authors and works to 1700  $\neq$  jCervantes Saavedra, Miguel de, 1547-1616

700 00  $\neq$  aCervantes Saavedra, Miguel de,  $\neq$  d1547-1616.

084 0 $\neq$  alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153  $\neq$  aE843  $\neq$  hUnited States  $\neq$  hLater twentieth century, 1961-  $\neq$  hKennedy's administration, 1961-November 22, 1963  $\neq$  hBiography of John Fitzgerald Kennedy, 1917-1963  $\neq$  jKennedy family (not genealogy)

700 30  $\neq$  aKennedy family.

084 0b ‡ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ‡ aPR2751.A3 ‡ hEnglish literature ‡ hEnglish renaissance (1500-1640) ‡ hThe drama ‡ hIndividual authors ‡ hShakespeare, William ‡ hCollected works ‡ jThird folio edition (1664)

700 10 ‡ aShakespeare, William, ‡ d1564-1616. ‡ tSelections. ‡ f1664.

084 0b ‡ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ‡ aPS1624.A1 ‡ hAmerican literature ‡ hIndividual authors ‡ h19th century ‡ hEmerson, Ralph Waldo ‡ hPoems ‡ jCollected. By date

700 10 ‡ aEmerson, Ralph Waldo, ‡ d1803-1882. ‡ tPoems.

084 0b ‡ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ‡ aPR3330.A ‡ hEnglish literature ‡ h17th and 18th centuries (1640-1770) ‡ hIndividual authors ‡ hBunyan, John ‡ hPilgrim's progress ‡ hTranslations. By date ‡ jGerman

700 10 ‡ aBunyan, John, ‡ d1628-1688. ‡ tPilgrim's progress. ‡ lGerman.

084 0b ‡ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ‡ aPR2810 ‡ hEnglish literature ‡ hEnglish renaissance (1500-1640) ‡ hThe drama ‡ hIndividual authors ‡ hShakespeare, William ‡ hSeparate works ‡ jKing Henry IV, part 1

700 10 ‡ aShakespeare, William, ‡ d1564-1616. ‡ tKing Henry IV. ‡ nPart 1.

084 0b ‡ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ‡ aPR4357 ‡ hEnglish literature ‡ h19th century, 1770/1800-1890/1900 ‡ hIndividual authors ‡ hByron, George Gordon ‡ hSeparate works ‡ jChilde Harold's pilgrimage

700 10 ‡ aByron, George Gordon Byron, ‡ cBaron, ‡ d1788-1824. ‡ tChilde Harold's pilgrimage.

084 0b ‡ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ‡ aDC204 ‡ hHistory of France ‡ hHistory ‡ hBy period ‡ hRevolutionary and Napoleonic period, 1789-1815 ‡ hBy period ‡ hEmpire (First). Napoleon I, 1804-1815 ‡ hGeneral special ‡ hBiography of Napoleon ‡ jNapoleon's relations with women

700 00 ‡ aNapoleon ‡ bl, ‡ cEmperor of the French, ‡ d1769-1821 ‡ xRelations with women.

084 0b ‡ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ‡ aPR2968 ‡ hEnglish literature ‡ hEnglish renaissance (1500-1640) ‡ hThe drama ‡ hIndividual authors ‡ hShakespeare, William ‡ hCriticism and interpretation ‡ hHistory of Shakespearean criticism ‡ j18th century

700 10 ‡ aShakespeare, William, ‡ d1564-1616 ‡ xCriticism and interpretation ‡ xHistory ‡ y18th century.

084 0b ‡ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ‡ aPT2130.L4 ‡ hGerman literature ‡ hIndividual authors or works ‡ h1700-ca. 1860/70 ‡ hGoethe, Johann Wolfgang von, 1749-1832 ‡ hBiography and criticism ‡ hBiography ‡ hHomes and haunts ‡ hSpecial ‡ jLeipzig

700 10 ‡ aGoethe, Johann Wolfgang von, ‡ d1749-1832 ‡ xHomes and haunts ‡ zGermany ‡ zLeipzig.

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*  
 153 bb ≠ a941.064092 ≠ hGeography, history, and auxiliary disciplines ≠ kHistory of ancient world; of specific continents, countries, localities; of extraterrestrial worlds ≠ kGeneral history of modern world, of extraterrestrial worlds ≠ hGeneral history of Europe. Western Europe ≠ hBritish Isles ≠ hHouse of Stuart and Commonwealth periods, 1603-1714 ≠ h Protectorate of Oliver Cromwell, 1653-1658 ≠ hHistorical, geographic, persons treatment ≠ jPersons

700 10 ≠ aCromwell, Oliver, ≠ d1599-1658.

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*  
 153 bb ≠ a947.05092 ≠ hGeography, history, and auxiliary disciplines ≠ kHistory of ancient world; of specific continents, countries, localities; of extraterrestrial worlds ≠ kGeneral history of modern world, of extraterrestrial worlds ≠ hGeneral history of Europe. Western Europe ≠ hEastern Europe. Russia ≠ kHistorical periods of Russia ≠ hReign of Peter I (the Great), 1689-1725 ≠ hHistorical, geographic, persons treatment ≠ jPersons

700 00 ≠ aPeter ≠ bl, ≠ cEmperor of Russia ≠ d1672-1725.

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*  
 153 bb ≠ a973.924092 ≠ hGeography, history, and auxiliary disciplines ≠ kHistory of ancient world; of specific continents, countries, localities; of extraterrestrial worlds ≠ kGeneral history of modern world, of extraterrestrial worlds ≠ hGeneral history of North America ≠ kCountries and localities ≠ hUnited States ≠ h1901- ≠ h1953- ≠ hAdministration of Richard Milhous Nixon, 1969-1974 ≠ hHistorical, geographic, persons treatment ≠ jPersons

700 10 ≠ aNixon, Richard M. ≠ q(Richard Milhous), ≠ d1913-

084 0b ≠ afcps *[Canadian FC Classification]*  
 153 bb ≠ aFC462 ≠ hCanada ≠ hThe British colonial period ≠ hThe two Canadas, 1791-1841 ≠ hPolitical history ≠ jLord Durham's report  
 700 15 ≠ aDurham, John George Lambton, ≠ cEarl of, ≠ d1792-1840 ≠ tReport on the Affairs of British North America, from the Earl of Durham, Her Majesty's High Commissioner

---

## 710 Index Term—Corporate Name (R)

### First Indicator

Type of corporate name entry element

- 0 Inverted name
- 1 Jurisdiction name
- 2 Name in direct order

### Second Indicator

Thesaurus

- 0 Library of Congress Subject Headings/Name authority file
- 1 LC subject headings for children's literature
- 2 Medical Subject Headings/NLM name authority file
- 3 National Agricultural Library subject authority file
- 4 Source not specified
- 5 Canadian Subject Headings/NLC name authority file
- 6 Répertoire de vedettes-matière
- 7 Source specified in subfield #2

### Subfield Codes

#### *Name portion*

- #a Corporate name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR)
- #b Subordinate unit (R)
- #c Location of meeting (NR)
- #e Relator term (R)

#### *Title portion*

- #t Title of a work (NR)
- #f Date of a work (NR)
- #h Medium (NR)
- #k Form subheading (R)
- #l Language of a work (NR)
- #p Name of part/section of a work (R)
- #m Medium of performance for music (R)
- #o Arranged statement for music (NR)
- #r Key for music (NR)
- #s Version (NR)

#### *Name and title portions*

- #d Date of meeting or treaty signing (R)
- #g Miscellaneous information (NR)
- #n Number of part/section/meeting (R)

#### *Subject subdivision portion*

- #v Form subdivision (R)
- #x General subdivision (R)
- #y Chronological subdivision (R)
- #z Geographic subdivision (R)

#### *Control subfields*

- #i Explanatory text (R)
- #0 Record control number (R)
- #2 Source of heading or term (NR)
- #3 Materials specified (NR)
- #4 Relator code (R)
- #6 Linkage (NR)
- #8 Field link and sequence number (R)



## FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a corporate name or the corporate name portion of a name/title field used as an index term that supplements terms derived in the MARC record. The name may be referred to in the classification number and caption in field 153 (Classification Number). The field may be used to link a classification number with a related controlled corporate name heading. The values in the second indicator position or the data in subfield  $\#2$  (Source of heading or term) identify the subject heading system or thesaurus used by an institution to formulate the corporate name index term. Terms not controlled by a thesaurus or authority file are contained in field 753 (Index Term–Uncontrolled).

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Guidelines for applying subfield  $\#i$  (Explanatory text) and subfield  $\#0$  (Record control number) and examples of field 710 are provided in this section. Guidelines for applying the remaining content designators and input conventions are provided in the *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*: field X10 (Corporate Names–General Information) and field 610 (Subject Added Entry–Corporate Name).

## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

 $\#i$  - Explanatory text

Subfield  $\#i$  contains explanatory text associated with the index term.

 $\#0$  - Record control number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A.

## ■ EXAMPLES

084 0 $\#$  alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153  $\#b\#$  aKF4987.F6  $\#h$ United States (General)  $\#h$ Constitutional law  $\#h$ Organs of the government  $\#h$ The legislative branch  $\#h$ The Congress  $\#h$ The Senate  $\#h$ Committees  $\#h$ Particular committees, A-Z  $\#j$ Foreign Relations Committee

710 10  $\#a$ United States.  $\#b$ Congress.  $\#b$ Senate.  $\#b$ Committee on Foreign Relations.

084 0 $\#$  alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153  $\#b\#$  aLD2350  $\#c$ LD2399  $\#h$ Individual institutions  $\#h$ United States  $\#j$ Illinois. University. Urbana, Illinois.

710 20  $\#a$ University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign.

084 0 $\#$  alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153  $\#b\#$  aKJV4074.51946  $\#h$ Law of France  $\#h$ Constitutional law. Droit constitutionnel  $\#h$ General  $\#h$ Sources  $\#h$ Constitutions  $\#h$ Individual constitutions  $\#j$ Constitution of October 27, 1946. Constitution du 27 octobre 1946

710 10  $\#a$ France  $\#t$ Constitution (1946)

084 0 $\#$  alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153  $\#b\#$  aJX1977.A417  $\#h$ International law. Foreign relations. Diplomacy. International arbitration  $\#h$ International arbitration, organization, etc.  $\#h$ Special topics  $\#h$ United Nations  $\#h$ United Nations, 1946-  $\#h$ General assembly  $\#h$ Official records  $\#j$ French edition

710 20  $\#a$ United Nations.  $\#b$ General Assembly.  $\#t$ Official records.  $\#i$ French.

084 0b ≠ alcc *[Library of Congress Classification]*  
 153 bb ≠ aZ663.78.A4 ≠ hLibraries ≠ hCollections ≠ hIndividual libraries ≠ hLibrary of Congress ≠ hCollections Services. Processing Services. Processing Department ≠ hSubject Cataloging Division. Classification Division ≠ jL.C. Classification--Additions and changes  
 710 20 ≠ aLibrary of Congress ≠ bCataloging Policy and Support Office. ≠ tLC classification, additions and changes.

084 0b ≠ alcc *[Library of Congress Classification]*  
 153 bb ≠ aHG3881.5.I58 ≠ hFinance ≠ hForeign exchange. International finance ≠ hInternational finance. International monetary system. International banking ≠ hIndividual international financial institutions, A-Z ≠ jInternational Monetary Fund  
 710 20 ≠ aInternational Monetary Fund. ≠ 0(DLC)nbb81052755

084 0b ≠ alcc *[Library of Congress Classification]*  
 153 bb ≠ aBX940 ≠ cBX1745 ≠ hChristian denominations ≠ hCatholic Church ≠ jHistory  
 710 20 ≠ aCatholic Church ≠ xHistory.

084 0b ≠ alcc *[Library of Congress Classification]*  
 153 bb ≠ aLD2152 ≠ hIndividual institutions ≠ hUnited States ≠ hHarvard University, Cambridge, Massachusetts ≠ hHistory and description ≠ hHistory ≠ hBy period ≠ jEarly to 1800  
 710 20 ≠ aHarvard University ≠ xHistory ≠ y18th century.

084 0b ≠ alcc *[Library of Congress Classification]*  
 153 bb ≠ aBX1517.2 ≠ hChristian denominations ≠ hCatholic Church ≠ hHistory ≠ hBy region or country ≠ hEurope ≠ hAustria ≠ hBy period ≠ j1945-  
 710 20 ≠ aCatholic Church ≠ zAustria ≠ xHistory ≠ y20th century.

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*  
 153 bb ≠ a332.1538 ≠ hSocial sciences ≠ hEconomics ≠ kEconomics of labor, finance, land, energy ≠ hFinancial economics ≠ hBanks ≠ hInternational banks ≠ hInternational banks for development of resources and production ≠ jInter-American Development Bank  
 710 20 ≠ aInter-American Development Bank.

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*  
 153 bb ≠ a266.5133 ≠ hReligion ≠ kChristianity ≠ kSpecific elements of Christianity ≠ kChristian church ≠ hChristian social and ecclesiastical theology ≠ hMissions ≠ hMissions of specific denominations and sects ≠ hPresbyterian churches, Reformed churches centered in America, Congregational churches, Puritanism ≠ kPresbyterian churches of United States, of British Commonwealth origin ≠ hPresbyterian churches of United States origin ≠ hSpecific denominations ≠ jPresbyterian Church in the United States  
 710 20 ≠ aPresbyterian Church in the U.S. ≠ xMissions.

---



## 711 Index Term--Meeting Name (R)

### First Indicator

Type of meeting name entry element

- 0 Inverted name
- 1 Jurisdiction name
- 2 Name in direct order

### Second Indicator

Thesaurus

- 0 Library of Congress Subject Headings/Name authority file
- 1 LC subject headings for children's literature
- 2 Medical Subject Headings/NLM name authority file
- 3 National Agricultural Library subject authority file
- 4 Source not specified
- 5 Canadian Subject Headings/NLC name authority file
- 6 Répertoire de vedettes-matière
- 7 Source specified in subfield #2

### Subfield Codes

#### *Name portion*

- #a Meeting name or jurisdiction name as entry element (NR)
- #q Name of meeting following jurisdiction name entry element (NR)
- #d Date of meeting or treaty signing (R)
- #c Location of Meeting (NR)
- #e Subordinate unit (R)

#### *Title portion*

- #t Title of a work (NR)
- #f Date of a work (NR)
- #h Medium (NR)
- #k Form subheading (R)
- #l Language of a work (NR)
- #p Name of part/section of a work (R)
- #s Version (NR)

#### *Name and title portions*

- #g Miscellaneous information (NR)
- #n Number of part/section/meeting (R)

#### *Subject subdivision portion*

- #v Form subdivision (R)
- #x General subdivision (R)
- #y Chronological subdivision (R)
- #z Geographic subdivision (R)

#### *Control subfields*

- #i Explanatory text (R)
- #0 Record control number (R)
- #2 Source of heading or term (NR)
- #3 Materials specified (NR)
- #4 Relator code (R)
- #6 Linkage (NR)
- #8 Field link and sequence number (R)

### FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a meeting or conference name used as an index term that supplements terms derived in the MARC record. The name may be referred to in the classification number and caption in field 153 (Classification Number). The field may be used to link a classification number with a related controlled meeting or conference name heading. The values in the second indicator position or the data in subfield #2 (Source of heading or term) identify the subject heading system or thesaurus used by an



institution to formulate the meeting name index term. Terms not controlled by a thesaurus or authority file are contained in field 753 (Index Term-Uncontrolled).

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Guidelines for applying subfield  $\neq$ i (Explanatory text) and subfield  $\neq$ 0 (Record control number) and examples of field 711 are provided in this section. Guidelines for applying the remaining content designators and input conventions are provided in the *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*: field X11 (Meeting Names-General Information) and field 611 (Subject Added Entry-Meeting Name).

### ■ SUBFIELD CODES

#### $\neq$ i - Explanatory text

Subfield  $\neq$ i contains explanatory text associated with the index term.

#### $\neq$ 0 - Record control number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A.

### ■ EXAMPLES

084 0 $\neq$   $\neq$ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153  $\neq$   $\neq$ aGV722.5.P3  $\neq$ hRecreation. Leisure  $\neq$ hSports  $\neq$ hAthletic contests. Sports events  $\neq$ hSpecial contests and events  $\neq$ hInternational  $\neq$ hOther contests and events, A-Z  $\neq$ jPan American Games

711 20  $\neq$ aPan American Games  $\neq$ 0(DLC)n $\neq$ 98056381

084 0 $\neq$   $\neq$ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153  $\neq$   $\neq$ aML410.W2  $\neq$ hLiterature on music  $\neq$ hHistory and criticism  $\neq$ hBiography  $\neq$ hIndividual  $\neq$ hComposers, A-Z  $\neq$ hWagner, Richard, 1813-1883  $\neq$ hBiography and criticism  $\neq$ hCritical works  $\neq$ jBayreuth

711 20  $\neq$ aBayreuther Festspiele.

084 0 $\neq$   $\neq$ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153  $\neq$   $\neq$ aF592.4  $\neq$ hUnited States local history  $\neq$ hThe West. Trans-Mississippi Region  $\neq$ hBy period  $\neq$ hEarly to 1848  $\neq$ hLewis and Clark Expedition, 1804-1806  $\neq$ jAuthentic history of the expedition. Lewis and Clark journals

711 20  $\neq$ aLewis and Clark Expedition  $\neq$ d(1804-1806)

084 0 $\neq$   $\neq$ addc  $\neq$ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153  $\neq$   $\neq$ a940.53141  $\neq$ hGeography, history, and auxiliary disciplines  $\neq$ kHistory of ancient world; of specific continents, countries, localities; of extraterrestrial worlds  $\neq$ kGeneral history of modern world, of extraterrestrial worlds  $\neq$ hGeneral history of Europe. Western Europe  $\neq$ h1918-  $\neq$ hWorld War II, 1939-1945  $\neq$ hSocial, political, economic history  $\neq$ hPolitical, diplomatic, economic results  $\neq$ jConferences and treaties

711 20  $\neq$ aPotsdam Conference  $\neq$ d(1945)

## 720 Index Term–Uncontrolled Name (R)

### First Indicator

Type of name

- ␣ Not specified
- 1 Personal
- 2 Other

### Second Indicator

Undefined

- ␣ Undefined

---

### Subfield Codes

- |                     |                                       |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------|
| ⊕a Name (NR)        | ⊕6 Linkage (NR)                       |
| ⊕e Relator term (R) | ⊕8 Field link and sequence number (R) |
| ⊕4 Relator code (R) |                                       |
- 

### FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a name used as an index term that is not derived from a controlled subject heading system / thesaurus. It is also used for names that have not been formulated according to cataloging rules. The names recorded in field 720 may be of any type (e.g., personal, corporate, meeting). This field is used to provide additional names not appearing in the classification data record to provide subject access to the classification number in field 153 (Classification Number).

The parts of names consisting of several parts can be recorded in whatever order is desired. Field 720 is repeated for multiple names.

---

### GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

#### ■ INDICATORS

##### First Indicator - Type of name

The first indicator position contains a value that indicates whether the name is personal, not personal, or the type is not known.

##### ␣ - Not specified

Value ␣ indicates that the type of name is not known or not specified.

##### 1 - Personal

Value 1 indicates that the name is known to be personal.

##### 2 - Other

Value 2 indicates that the name is known to be other than personal.

##### Second Indicator - Undefined

The second indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (␣).

## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

### ≠ a - Name

Subfield ≠a contains an uncontrolled name that comprises an entry in an index to a classification schedule. There are no requirements for the style, formulation, or structure of the name, or whether it consists of one part or of several. Parts may be recorded in direct or inverted order. A single occurrence of subfield ≠a contains all the parts of the name. Multiple names are recorded in separate occurrences of field 720.

084 0b ≠alcc     *[Library of Congress Classification]*  
 153 bb ≠aZ8401.3 ≠hPersonal bibliography ≠hH ≠jHesse, Hermann  
 720 1b ≠aHesse, Hermann

### ≠ e - Relator term

Subfield ≠e contains a designation of function that describes the relationship between a name and a work, e.g., ed., comp., ill., tr., collector, joint author. Subfield ≠e does not apply to classification records.

### ≠ 4 - Relator code

Subfield ≠4 contains a MARC code that specifies the relationship between a name and a work. More than one relator code may be used if the name entity has more than one function. The source of the MARC code is *MARC Code List for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions* that is maintained by the Library of Congress. The code is given after the name portion in name/title fields. Subfield ≠4 does not apply to classification records.

### ≠ 6 - Linkage

### ≠ 8 - Field link and sequence number

See the descriptions of these subfields in Appendix A.

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

There are no special punctuation or spacing conventions prescribed for field 720.

## 730 Index Term–Uniform Title (R)

### First Indicator

Nonfiling characters

0-9 Number of nonfiling characters

### Second Indicator

Thesaurus

- 0 Library of Congress Subject Headings/Name authority file
- 1 LC subject headings for children's literature
- 2 Medical Subject Headings/NLM name authority file
- 3 National Agricultural Library subject authority file
- 4 Source not specified
- 5 Canadian Subject Headings/NLC name authority file
- 6 Répertoire de vedettes-matière
- 7 Source specified in subfield ≠2

### Subfield Codes

#### *Title portion*

- ≠a Uniform title (NR)
- ≠n Number of part/section of a work (R)
- ≠p Name of part/section of a work (R)
- ≠l Language of a work (NR)
- ≠f Date of a work (NR)
- ≠k Form subheading (R)
- ≠s Version (NR)
- ≠d Date of treaty signing (R)
- ≠h Medium (NR)
- ≠m Medium of performance for music (R)
- ≠o Arranged statement for music (NR)
- ≠r Key for music (NR)
- ≠g Miscellaneous information (NR)
- ≠t Title of a work (NR)

#### *Subject subdivision portion*

- ≠v Form subdivision (R)
- ≠x General subdivision (R)
- ≠y Chronological subdivision (R)
- ≠z Geographic subdivision (R)

#### *Control subfields*

- ≠i Explanatory text (R)
- ≠0 Record control number (R)
- ≠2 Source of heading or term (NR)
- ≠3 Materials specified (NR)
- ≠6 Linkage (NR)
- ≠8 Field link and sequence number (R)

### FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a uniform title used as an index term that supplements terms derived in the MARC record. The uniform title may be referred to in the classification number and caption in field 153 (Classification Number). The field may be used to link a classification number with a related controlled uniform title heading. The values in the second indicator position or the data in subfield ≠2 (Source of heading or term) identify the subject heading system or thesaurus used by an institution to formulate the uniform title index term. Terms not controlled by a thesaurus or authority file are contained in field 753 (Index Term–Uncontrolled).



## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Guidelines for applying subfield  $\#i$  (Explanatory text) and subfield  $\#0$  (Record control number) and examples of field 730 are provided in this section. Guidelines for applying the remaining content designators and input conventions are provided in the *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*: field X30 (Uniform Titles-General Information) and field 630 (Subject Added Entry-Uniform Title).

## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

 $\#i$  - Explanatory text

Subfield  $\#i$  contains explanatory text associated with the index term.

 $\#0$  - Record control number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A.

## ■ EXAMPLES

- 084 0 $\#$   $\#$  alcc      [*Library of Congress Classification*]  
 153  $\#$   $\#$   $\#$  aPT1419.C3  $\#$  hGerman literature  $\#$  hMiddle High German  $\#$  hCollections  $\#$  hBy form  
 $\#$  hPoetry  $\#$  hSpecial forms  $\#$  hLyric  $\#$  hMinnesingers  $\#$  hMedieval collections  $\#$  jCarmina  
 burana  
 730 00  $\#$  aCarmina Burana.
- 084 0 $\#$   $\#$  alcc      [*Library of Congress Classification*]  
 153  $\#$   $\#$   $\#$  aDC238.5  $\#$  hHistory of France  $\#$  hHistory  $\#$  hBy period  $\#$  hRevolutionary and  
 Napoleonic period, 1789-1815  $\#$  hNapoleonic wars, 1800-1815  $\#$  h1814  $\#$  hIndividual  
 events, battles, etc, A-Z  $\#$  hAbdication (April 6, 1814) and Elba  $\#$  jTreaty of Paris, 1814  
 730 00  $\#$  aTreaty of Paris  $\#$  d(1815)
- 084 0 $\#$   $\#$  alcc      [*Library of Congress Classification*]  
 153  $\#$   $\#$   $\#$  aBS135  $\#$  cBS136  $\#$  hThe Bible  $\#$  hGeneral  $\#$  hTexts and versions  $\#$  hModern texts  
 and versions  $\#$  hEnglish  $\#$  hEnglish versions  $\#$  jWycliffe's (1380)  
 730 00  $\#$  aBible.  $\#$  pN.T.  $\#$  lEnglish (Middle English).  $\#$  sWycliffe.  $\#$  kSelections
- 084 0 $\#$   $\#$  alcc      [*Library of Congress Classification*]  
 153  $\#$   $\#$   $\#$  aBM487.A5  $\#$  hJudaism  $\#$  hPre-Talmudic Jewish literature (non-Biblical)  $\#$  hSpecial  
 texts or groups of texts  $\#$  hDead Sea scrolls  $\#$  hTexts  $\#$  jGerman. By date  
 730 00  $\#$  aDead Sea scrolls.  $\#$  lGerman.
- 084 0 $\#$   $\#$  alcc      [*Library of Congress Classification*]  
 153  $\#$   $\#$   $\#$  aPR1588  $\#$  hEnglish literature  $\#$  hAnglo-Saxon literature  $\#$  hIndividual authors and  
 works  $\#$  hBeowulf  $\#$  hCriticism  $\#$  jLanguage, grammar, etc.  
 730 00  $\#$  aBeowulf  $\#$  xLanguage.  $\#$  0(DLC)sh $\#$  85013267
- 084 0 $\#$   $\#$  alcc      [*Library of Congress Classification*]  
 153  $\#$   $\#$   $\#$  aBS420  $\#$  hThe Bible  $\#$  hGeneral  $\#$  hWorks about the Bible  $\#$  hConcordances  
 $\#$  jPolyglot  
 730 00  $\#$  aBible  $\#$  vConcordances.
- 084 0 $\#$   $\#$  alcc      [*Library of Congress Classification*]  
 153  $\#$   $\#$   $\#$  aBS635.A5  $\#$  cBS635.Z  $\#$  hThe Bible  $\#$  hGeneral  $\#$  hWorks about the Bible  
 $\#$  hAuxiliary topics  $\#$  hBiblical history. Bible and history  $\#$  hGeneral works  $\#$  j1801-1950  
 730 00  $\#$  aBible  $\#$  xHistory of Biblical events.

- 084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21      *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*  
 153 bb ‡ a220.5204 ‡ hReligion ‡ hBible ‡ kGeneralities ‡ kTexts, versions, translations  
 ‡ hModern versions and translations ‡ hVersions in English and  
 Anglo-Saxon ‡ kEnglish ‡ jRevised version  
 730 00 ‡ aBible. ‡ lEnglish. ‡ sAmerican Standard. ‡ f1901.
- 084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21      *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*  
 153 bb ‡ a227.3 ‡ hReligion ‡ hBible ‡ kSpecific parts of Bible, Apocrypha, pseudepigrapha,  
 intertestamental works ‡ hEpistles ‡ jCorinthians 2  
 730 00 ‡ aBible ‡ pN.T. ‡ pCorinthians, 2nd.
- 084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21      *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*  
 153 bb ‡ a297.1226 ‡ hReligion ‡ hComparative religion and religions other than Christianity  
 ‡ kReligions other than Christianity ‡ hIslam, Babism, Bahai Faith ‡ kIslam ‡ kSources of  
 Islam; Islamic doctrinal theology (ʿAqāid and Kalām); Islam and secular disciplines; Islam  
 and other systems of belief; Islamic worship ‡ hSources of Islam ‡ hKoran and  
 Hadith ‡ hKoran ‡ jInterpretation and criticism (Exegesis)  
 730 00 ‡ aKoran ‡ xCriticism, interpretation, etc.
- 084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21      *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*  
 153 bb ‡ a220.07 ‡ hReligion ‡ hBible ‡ jEducation, research, related topics  
 730 00 ‡ aBible ‡ xStudy and teaching ‡ zFrance.
-

(

(

(

## 750 Index Term-Topical (R)

### First Indicator

#### Level of subject

- b No information available
- 0 No level specified
- 1 Primary subject
- 2 Secondary subject

### Second Indicator

#### Thesaurus

- 0 Library of Congress Subject Headings/Name authority file
- 1 LC subject headings for children's literature
- 2 Medical Subject Headings/NLM name authority file
- 3 National Agricultural Library subject authority file
- 4 Source not specified
- 5 Canadian Subject Headings/NLC name authority file
- 6 Répertoire de vedettes-matière
- 7 Source specified in subfield ≠2

### Subfield Codes

#### *Main term portion*

- ≠a Topical term or geographic name entry element (NR)
- ≠b Topical term following geographic name entry element (NR)
- ≠c Location of event (NR)
- ≠d Active date (NR)

#### *Subject subdivision portion*

- ≠v Form subdivision (R)
- ≠x General subdivision (R)
- ≠y Chronological subdivision (R)
- ≠z Geographic subdivision (R)

#### *Control subfields*

- ≠i Explanatory text (R)
- ≠0 Record control number (R)
- ≠2 Source of heading or term (NR)
- ≠3 Materials specified (NR)
- ≠6 Linkage (NR)
- ≠8 Field link and sequence number (R)

### FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a topical term used as an index term that supplements terms derived from data in the MARC classification record. The term may be referred to in the classification number and caption in field 153 (Classification Number). The field may be used to link a classification number with a related controlled subject heading. Topical index terms may consist of general subject terms including names of events or objects. The 750 field provides access to classification numbers according to generally accepted thesaurus-building rules (e.g., *Library of Congress Subject Headings*, (LCSH), *Medical Subject Headings* (MeSH)). The values in the second indicator position or in the data in subfield ≠2 (Source of heading or term) identify the subject heading system or thesaurus used by an institution to formulate the topical index term. To be included in this field, a topical index term



must match the controlled heading, including any subdivisions. Index terms not controlled by a thesaurus are contained in field 753 (Index Term-Uncontrolled).

## **GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS**

Guidelines for applying subfield  $\neq$ i (Explanatory text) and subfield  $\neq$ 0 (Record control number) and examples of field 750 are provided in this section. Guidelines for applying the remaining content designators and input conventions are provided in the *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*: field 650 (Subject Added Entry-Topical Term).

### **■ SUBFIELD CODES**

#### **$\neq$ i - Explanatory text**

Subfield  $\neq$ i contains explanatory text associated with the index term.

#### **$\neq$ 0 - Record control number**

See description of this subfield in Appendix A.

### **■ EXAMPLES**

084 0 $\neq$ b  $\neq$ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]  
 153  $\neq$ b $\neq$   $\neq$ aE860  $\neq$ hUnited States  $\neq$ hLater twentieth century, 1961-  $\neq$ hNixon's  
 administration, 1969-August 9, 1974  $\neq$ jWatergate Affair, 1972-  
 750 00  $\neq$ aWatergate Affair, 1972-1974.

084 0 $\neq$ b  $\neq$ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]  
 153  $\neq$ b $\neq$   $\neq$ aHQ1028  $\neq$ hThe family. Marriage. Women  $\neq$ hThe family. Marriage. Home  
 $\neq$ jMarriage with deceased wife's sister  
 750 00  $\neq$ aMarriage with deceased wife's sister.

084 0 $\neq$ b  $\neq$ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]  
 153  $\neq$ b $\neq$   $\neq$ aBL65.C58  $\neq$ hReligions. Mythology. Rationalism  $\neq$ hReligion  $\neq$ hReligion in relation  
 to other subjects, A-Z  $\neq$ jCivil rights  
 750 00  $\neq$ aCivil rights  $\neq$ xReligious aspects.

084 0 $\neq$ b  $\neq$ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]  
 153  $\neq$ b $\neq$   $\neq$ aHV5025  $\neq$ hSocial pathology. Social and public welfare.  
 Criminology  $\neq$ hAlcoholism. Intemperance. Temperance reform  $\neq$ hHistory  $\neq$ j19th-20th  
 centuries  
 750 00  $\neq$ aAlcoholism  $\neq$ xHistory  $\neq$ y19th century.

084 0 $\neq$ b  $\neq$ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]  
 153  $\neq$ b $\neq$   $\neq$ aHV6564  $\neq$ hSocial pathology. Social and public welfare. Criminology  
 $\neq$ hCriminology  $\neq$ hCrimes and offenses  $\neq$ hCrimes against the person  $\neq$ hSex crimes  
 $\neq$ hRape  $\neq$ hBy region or country  $\neq$ hUnited States  $\neq$ hBy region  $\neq$ jSouthern states  
 750 00  $\neq$ aRape  $\neq$ zSouthern States

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*

153 bb ‡ z7 ‡ a613 ‡ hGroups of persons ‡ kPersons by various occupational characteristics  
‡ kSpecialists ‡ hPersons occupied with applied sciences (Technologists) ‡ h Persons  
occupied with medical sciences. Persons occupied with medicine ‡ jNursing and  
promotion of health

750 00 ‡ aNurses.

*[This record is for a table number, indicated by code b in 008/06 (Kind of record).]*

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*

153 bb ‡ a641.692 ‡ hTechnology (Applied sciences) ‡ hHome economics and family living  
‡ hFood and drink ‡ kFood preservation, storage, cooking ‡ hCooking specific materials  
‡ kSpecific food ‡ hCooking game and seafood ‡ jFish

750 00 ‡ aCookery (Fish)

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*

153 bb ‡ a707.4 ‡ hThe arts. Fine and decorative arts ‡ kFine and decorative arts ‡ k  
Standard subdivisions of fine and decorative arts ‡ hEducation, research, related topics  
of fine and decorative arts ‡ jTemporary and traveling collections and exhibits

750 00 ‡ aTraveling exhibitions.

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*

153 bb ‡ a780.902 ‡ hThe arts. Fine and decorative arts ‡ hMusic ‡ hHistorical, geographic,  
persons treatment ‡ kPeriods of stylistic development of music ‡ j500-1449

750 00 ‡ aMusic ‡ y500-1400

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*

153 bb ‡ a940.546544 ‡ hGeography, history, and auxiliary disciplines ‡ kHistory of ancient  
world; of specific continents, countries, localities; of extraterrestrial worlds ‡ kGeneral  
history of modern world, of extraterrestrial worlds ‡ hGeneral history of Europe.  
Western Europe ‡ h1918- ‡ hMilitary history of World War II ‡ hCelebrations,  
commemorations, memorials ‡ hMonuments and cemeteries ‡ hEurope. Western  
Europe ‡ jFrance and Monaco

750 00 ‡ aWorld War, 1939-1945 ‡ xMonuments ‡ zFrance

---



## 751 Index Term–Geographic Name (R)

### First Indicator

Undefined

␣ Undefined

### Second Indicator

Thesaurus

- 0 Library of Congress Subject Headings/Name authority file
- 1 LC subject headings for children's literature
- 2 Medical Subject Headings/NLM name authority file
- 3 National Agricultural Library subject authority file
- 4 Source not specified
- 5 Canadian Subject Headings/NLC name authority file
- 6 Répertoire de vedettes-matière
- 7 Source specified in subfield ␣2

### Subfield Codes

#### *Main term portion*

␣a Geographic name (NR)

#### *Subject subdivision portion*

- ␣v Form subdivision (R)
- ␣x General subdivision (R)
- ␣y Chronological subdivision (R)
- ␣z Geographic subdivision (R)

#### *Control subfields*

- ␣i Explanatory text (R)
- ␣0 Record control number (R)
- ␣2 Source of heading or term (NR)
- ␣3 Materials specified (NR)
- ␣6 Linkage (NR)
- ␣8 Field link and sequence number (R)

### FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a geographic name used as an index term that supplements terms derived in the MARC record. The geographic name may be referred to in the classification number and caption in field 153 (Classification Number). The field may be used to link a classification number with a related controlled geographic name heading. The values in the second indicator position or in the data in subfield ␣2 (Source of heading or term) identify the subject heading system or thesaurus used by an institution to formulate the geographic name index term. Terms not controlled by a thesaurus or authority file are contained in field 753 (Index Term–Uncontrolled).

### GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Guidelines for applying subfield ␣i (Explanatory text) and subfield ␣0 (Record control number) and examples of field 751 are provided in this section. Guidelines for applying the remaining content designators and input conventions are provided in the *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*: field 651 (Subject Added Entry–Geographic Name).

## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

### ≠ i - Explanatory text

Subfield ≠ i contains explanatory text associated with the index term.

### ≠ 0 - Record control number

See description of this subfield in Appendix A.

## ■ EXAMPLES

084 0b ≠ alcc *[Library of Congress Classification]*

153 bb ≠ aD965.5 ≠ hHistory (General) ≠ hEurope (General) ≠ hDescription and travel ≠ hBy region ≠ jNorth Sea

751 b0 ≠ aNorth Sea Region ≠ xDescription and travel.

084 0b ≠ alcc *[Library of Congress Classification]*

153 bb ≠ aG3732.A3 ≠ hMaps ≠ hBy region or country ≠ hAmerica. Western Hemisphere ≠ hNorth America ≠ hUnited States ≠ hEastern United states, 1870 and later ≠ hNortheastern States ≠ hNortheast Atlantic states ≠ hNew England ≠ hMaine ≠ hRegions, natural features, etc., A-Z ≠ jAcadia National Park

751 b0 ≠ aAcadia National Park (Me.) ≠ vMaps.

084 0b ≠ alcc *[Library of Congress Classification]*

153 bb ≠ zH1 ≠ a68.95 ≠ hTables of geographical divisions ≠ hAsia ≠ hMiddle East. Near East ≠ hArabian Peninsula. Arabia. Persian Gulf States ≠ jKuwait

751 b0 ≠ aKuwait. ≠ 0(DLC)nbb8053139

*[Record is for a table number, indicated by code b in 008/06 (Kind of record).]*

084 0b ≠ alcc *[Library of Congress Classification]*

153 bb ≠ aF191 ≠ cF205 ≠ hUnited States local history ≠ jDistrict of Columbia. Washington

751 b0 ≠ aWashington (D.C.) ≠ xHistory.

084 0b ≠ alcc *[Library of Congress Classification]*

153 bb ≠ aHC106.7 ≠ hEconomic history and conditions ≠ hBy region or country ≠ hAmerica. Western Hemisphere ≠ hNorth America ≠ hUnited States ≠ hBy period ≠ j1971-1981

751 b0 ≠ aUnited States ≠ xEconomic conditions ≠ y1971-1981

084 0b ≠ alcc *[Library of Congress Classification]*

153 bb ≠ aF786 ≠ hUnited States local history ≠ hThe New Southwest. Southwestern States ≠ j1848-1950

680 0b ≠ iIncluding the region of the Mexico Cession of 1848, the Texas Purchase of 1850, and the Gadsden Purchase.

680 0b ≠ iIncluding the Mexican boundary; Santa Fe Trail; frontier troubles with Mexico, Gadsden Purchase, 1853; etc.

751 b0 ≠ aUnited States ≠ xBoundaries ≠ zMexico

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*

153 bb ≠ z2 ≠ a811 ≠ hGeographic Areas, Historical Periods, Persons ≠ kSpecific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds ≠ kThe modern world; extraterrestrial worlds ≠ hSouth America ≠ hBrazil ≠ jNorthern region

680 1b ≠ iClass here Amazon River

751 b0 ≠ aAmazon River.



084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*

153 bb ‡ z2 ‡ a42134 ‡ hGeographic Areas, Historical Periods, Persons ‡ kSpecific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds ‡ kThe modern world; extraterrestrial worlds ‡ hEurope. Western Europe ‡ hEngland and Wales ‡ kEngland ‡ hGreater London ‡ hWest London ‡ jKensington and Chelsea Royal Borough

751 b0 ‡ aKensington and Chelsea (London, England)

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*

153 bb ‡ a330.944 ‡ hSocial sciences ‡ hEconomics ‡ hEconomic situation and conditions ‡ hGeographic treatment (Economic geography) by specific continents, countries, localities ‡ hEurope. Western Europe ‡ jFrance and Monaco

751 b0 ‡ aFrance ‡ xEconomic conditions.

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*

153 bb ‡ a938.05 ‡ hGeography, history, and auxiliary disciplines ‡ kHistory of ancient world; of specific continents, countries, localities; of extraterrestrial worlds ‡ hHistory of ancient world to ca. 499 ‡ kSpecific places ‡ hGreece to 323 ‡ jPeriod of Peloponnesian War, 431-404 B.C.

751 b0 ‡ aGreece ‡ xHistory ‡ yPeloponnesian War, 431-404 B.C.

---



## 753 Index Term–Uncontrolled (R)

### First Indicator

Undefined

␣ Undefined

### Second Indicator

Undefined

␣ Undefined

### Subfield Codes

⊕a	Index term (R)	⊕t	See also reference term–succeeding level (R)
⊕b	Index term–succeeding level (R)	⊕u	Use reference term (NR)
⊕d	Index term referred from (R)	⊕v	Use reference term–succeeding level (R)
⊕e	Example class number (R)	⊕6	Linkage (NR)
⊕i	Explanatory text (R)	⊕8	Field link and sequence number (R)
⊕s	See also reference term (NR)		

## FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains index terms to supplement terms derived from data in the MARC classification record that are not derived from a controlled subject heading system/thesaurus. It may be used to provide additional terms not appearing in the classification data record, such as synonyms or permutations of phrases, to provide references between related terms, and to provide vocabulary control using see references. Such index terms are not controlled by a thesaurus or other authority file, such as *LCSH* or *MeSH*. Index terms that are controlled are recorded in fields 700, 710, 711, 730, 750, or 751.

An uncontrolled index term in field 753 is contained in the record for the classification number or general index term to which it refers. If the index term is associated with a classification number the record contains field 153 (Classification Number). If an index term has no classification number associated with it or with any of its subtopics and thus cannot be contained in a record with a classification number in field 153, an index term record may be created (008/06 (Kind of record), code c) containing the index term in field 154 (General Explanatory Index Term), with the associated text in field 753.

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

### ■ INDICATORS

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (␣).

### ■ SUBFIELD CODES

#### ⊕a - Index term

Subfield ⊕a contains the terms comprising an entry in an index to a classification schedule. If the entry consists of terms at several levels, additional levels are contained in subfield ⊕b (Index term–succeeding level). The term in subfield ⊕a is used for a classification number citation in the published index. If the index term is an unused term that is followed by the used term in

subfield  $\neq$ u or a term under which a see also reference appears, it is contained in subfield  $\neq$ d (Index term referred from).

- 084 0 $\neq$ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]  
 153  $\neq$ aPS648.W58  $\neq$ hAmerican Literature  $\neq$ hCollections of American literature  $\neq$ hProse (General)  $\neq$ hSpecial forms and topics, A-Z  $\neq$ jWolf children  
 753  $\neq$ aWolf children in literature  $\neq$ bAmerican  $\neq$ bCollections  $\neq$ bProse

*Display example:*

Wolf children in literature  
 American  
 Collections  
 Prose PS648.W58

$\neq$  b - Index term-succeeding level

Subfield  $\neq$ b contains a term at a level after the first in an index term. Subfield  $\neq$ b may also be used for the succeeding level of an index term referred from, which is contained in subfield  $\neq$ d.

- 084 0 $\neq$ addc  $\neq$ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153  $\neq$ a338.47  $\neq$ hSocial sciences  $\neq$ hEconomics  $\neq$ hProduction  $\neq$ kSpecific kinds of industries  $\neq$ hSecondary industries and services  $\neq$ jGoods and services  
 680 1 $\neq$ iClass here quantities produced, shortages, surpluses, stockpiles, forecasts, and projections of supply and demand  
 753  $\neq$ aDemand  $\neq$ bforecasts  $\neq$ bsecondary industries

*Display example:*

Demand  
 forecasts  
 secondary industries 338.47

$\neq$  d - Index term referred from

Subfield  $\neq$ d contains an index term that refers to another index term, either as a see or see also reference. When subfield  $\neq$ d is used, the field also contains either subfield  $\neq$ s (See also reference term) or subfield  $\neq$ u (Use reference term).

- 084 0 $\neq$ addc  $\neq$ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153  $\neq$ a362.2  $\neq$ hSocial sciences  $\neq$ hSocial problems and services; associations  $\neq$ kSocial problems and services  $\neq$ kSpecific social problems and services  $\neq$ hSocial welfare problems and services  $\neq$ kProblems of and services to persons with illnesses and disabilities  $\neq$ jMental and emotional illnesses and disturbances  
 753  $\neq$ aMental illness  
 753  $\neq$ dCompulsive lying  $\neq$ sMental illness

*Display example:*

Compulsive lying  
 see also Mental illness  
 Mental illness 362.2

$\neq$  e - Example class number

Subfield  $\neq$ e contains a classification number or span that functions as an example related to data in other subfields in field 753.

- 084 0b ‡ anlm ‡ c5th ed., rev. *[National Library of Medicine Classification]*  
 154 bb ‡ aFollow-up studies  
 753 bb ‡ i(Form number 20 in any NLM schedule where applicable)  
 753 bb ‡ iln a particular area, with the subject of the original study, e.g. Heart Diseases,  
 ‡ eWG 210

**‡ i - Explanatory text**

Subfield ‡ i contains explanatory text associated with the index term.

- 084 0b ‡ anlm ‡ c5th ed., rev. *[National Library of Medicine Classification]*  
 154 bb ‡ aFollow-up studies  
 753 bb ‡ iForm number 20 in any NLM schedule where applicable  
 753 bb ‡ iln a particular area, with the subject of the original study, e.g. Heart Diseases,  
 ‡ eWG 210  
*[The record is an index only term record, identified by code c in 008/06 (Kind of record).]*

*Display example:*

Follow-up studies

(Form number 20 in any NLM schedule where applicable)

In a particular area, with the subject of the original  
 study, e.g., Heart Diseases WG210

**‡ s - See also reference term**

Subfield ‡ s contains a term to which a see also reference is made from the term in subfield ‡ d (Index term referred from).

- 084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*  
 153 bb ‡ a362.0425 ‡ hSocial sciences ‡ hSocial problems and services; associations  
 ‡ kSocial problems and services ‡ kSpecific social problems and services ‡ hSocial  
 welfare problems and services ‡ hSpecial topics ‡ hSocial problems ‡ jSocial action  
 753 bb ‡ aEmployment services ‡ bsocial services  
 753 bb ‡ aSheltered employment  
 753 bb ‡ dSheltered employment ‡ sEmployment services ‡ tsocial services

*Display example:*

Employment services

social services 362.0425

Sheltered employment 362.0425

see also Employment services – social services

**‡ t - See also reference term-succeeding level**

Subfield ‡ t contains a term at a level after the first in a see also reference term.

- 084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 *[Dewey Decimal Classification]*  
 153 bb ‡ a363.1929 ‡ hSocial sciences ‡ hSocial problems and services; associations  
 ‡ kSocial problems and services ‡ kSpecific social problems and services ‡ hOther  
 social problems and services ‡ hPublic safety programs ‡ hProduct hazards ‡ hFoods  
 ‡ jSpecific foods  
 680 0b ‡ alncluding beverages, canned goods, dairy products, meats  
 753 bb ‡ aDairy products ‡ bproduct safety  
 753 bb ‡ dDairy products ‡ bproduct safety ‡ sFood ‡ tproduct safety



*Display example:*

Dairy products  
 product safety 363.1929  
*see also* Food – product safety

**≠ u - Use reference term**

Subfield ≠ u contains the term under which a classification number citation will appear when the term in subfield ≠ d (Index term referred from) or field 154 (General Explanatory Index Term) contains an unused term.

**≠ v - Use reference term–succeeding level**

Subfield ≠ v contains a term at a level after the first under which a classification number citation will appear when the term in subfield ≠ d (Index term referred from) or field 154 (General Explanatory Index Term) contains an unused term.

**753** **bb** ≠ dState labor ≠ bWages ≠ uWages ≠ vState labor

*Display example:*

State labor < Classification Number >  
 Wages, see Wages – State labor

**≠ 6 - Linkage****≠ 8 - Field link and sequence number**

See description of these subfields in Appendix A.

**■ EXAMPLE**

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 **bb** ≠ a786.7 ≠ hThe arts. Fine and decorative arts ≠ hMusic ≠ kPrinciples, forms, ensembles, voices, instruments ≠ kEnsembles, voices, instruments ≠ kInstruments and their music ≠ kSpecific instruments and their music ≠ hKeyboard, mechanical, electrophonic, percussion instruments ≠ jElectrophones. Electronic instruments

**753** **bb** ≠ aElectronic musical instruments

**753** **bb** ≠ dElectronic musical instruments ≠ sElectrophones

**753** **bb** ≠ aElectrophones

**753** **bb** ≠ dComputers ≠ bmusic ≠ sElectrophones

*[The last index term, which is a see also reference, acts like a tracing, since it is located in the record representing the term to which it refers, i.e. the record for Electrophones, not the record for Computers--music.]*

*Display example:*

Computers  
 music  
*see also* Electrophones  
 Electronic musical instruments 786.7  
*see also* Electrophones  
 Electrophones 786.7

**INPUT CONVENTIONS**

In addition to terms in a classification index, this field may include any term which might be useful to the classifier, e.g. equivalent topics in other languages, commonly used terms, etc.

**Display constants** - Display constants may be system generated and associated with a subfield code. The following subfield codes may be associated with display constants:

<u>Subfield</u>	<u>Display constant</u>
#b	-
#s	<i>see also</i>
#t	-
#u	<i>see</i>
#v	-

---



## 754 Index Term–Faceted Topical Terms (R)

### First Indicator

Level of subject

- ␣ No information provided
- 0 No level specified
- 1 Primary
- 2 Secondary

### Second Indicator

Undefined

- ␣ Undefined

### Subfield Codes

- |                                    |                                       |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| ⊕a Focus term (R)                  | ⊕z Geographic subdivision (R)         |
| ⊕b Non-focus Term (R)              | ⊕2 Source of heading or term (NR)     |
| ⊕c Facet/hierarchy designation (R) | ⊕3 Materials specified (NR)           |
| ⊕v Form subdivision (R)            | ⊕6 Linkage (NR)                       |
| ⊕y Chronological subdivision (R)   | ⊕8 Field link and sequence number (R) |

### FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a topical subject constructed from a faceted vocabulary. For each term found in the field, an identification is given as to the facet/hierarchy in the thesaurus from which the term came. In addition, identification is given as to which term is the focus term of the expression.

### GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

Guidelines for applying the content designators for this field are provided in the *MARC 21 Format for Bibliographic Data*: field 654 (Subject Added Entry–Faceted Topical Term).









## 76X Number Building Fields—General Information

- 761 Add or Divide Like Instructions (R)
- 762 Table Identification (R)
- 763 Internal Subarrangement or Add Table Entry (R)
- 764 Rule Identification (R)
- 765 Synthesized Number Components (R)
- 768 Citation and Preference Order Instructions (R)

---

### DEFINITION AND SCOPE

The Number Building Fields provide instructions for building onto classification numbers from sources within the schedule and tables. Such fields are highly structured, and many are intended to assist the classifier in constructing classification numbers. The information in these fields is not written in a form adequate for public user display.

Footnotes containing instructions that apply to several classification numbers are converted to the appropriate 6XX or 76X field.

---



## 761 Add or Divide Like Instructions (R)

### First Indicator

Undefined

␣ Undefined

### Second Indicator

Combined note types

- 0 Not a combined note
- 1 Add or divide like portion of a combined note
- 2 Class elsewhere portion of a combined note
- 3 Relocation portion of a combined note

### Subfield Codes

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>⊕a Number where instructions are found—single number or beginning number of span (R)</li> <li>⊕b Base number (NR)</li> <li>⊕c Classification number—ending number of span (R)</li> <li>⊕d Divided like number (R)</li> <li>⊕e Example class number (R)</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>⊕f Facet designator (R)</li> <li>⊕i Explanatory text (R)</li> <li>⊕n Negative example class number (R)</li> <li>⊕r Root number (R)</li> <li>⊕x Other classification number (R)</li> <li>⊕z Table identification (R)</li> <li>⊕6 Linkage (NR)</li> <li>⊕8 Field link and sequence number (NR)</li> </ul> |
|--|--|

## FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains information necessary to construct a classification number by adding numbers from other parts of the schedule or from a table, or basing it on numbers defined in other parts of the schedule ("divided like").

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

### ■ INDICATORS

#### First Indicator - Undefined

The first indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (␣).

#### Second Indicator - Combined note types

The second indicator position contains a value that specifies whether the add or divide like instruction is combined with another type of instruction that is logically tied to the add or divide like note. An example is a statement of exceptions to an add note, where the pattern span cannot be used for a particular topic because the topic is classed elsewhere. If the note is a combination, it is split into separate but consecutive 761 fields according to note type and the second indicator value shows which type is contained in each 761 field.

#### 0 - Not a combined note

Value 0 indicates that the add or divide like note is not combined with another note type.



084 0b ≠ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ≠ aHB911 ≠ cHB1108 ≠ hEconomic theory. Demography ≠ hDemography.  
Population. Vital events ≠ hBirths. Fertility ≠ jBy region or country

761 b0 ≠ iAdd country number in table to ≠ b910

762 bb ≠ zH2

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a025.29 ≠ hGeneralities ≠ hLibrary and information sciences ≠ hOperations of  
libraries, archives, information centers ≠ hAcquisitions and collection development  
≠ kAcquisition of and collection development for specific types of materials ≠ j  
Acquisition of and collection development for materials from geographic areas

761 b0 ≠ iAdd to base number ≠ b025.29 ≠ inotation ≠ z2 ≠ d1 ≠ c9 ≠ ifrom Table 2, e.g.,  
acquisition of materials from Latin America ≠ e025.298

### 1 - Add or divide like portion of a combined note

Value 1 indicates that the field contains the add or divide like portion of a combined note.

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a338.17 ≠ hSocial sciences ≠ hEconomics ≠ hProduction ≠ kSpecific kinds of  
industries ≠ kPrimary (Extractive) industries ≠ hAgriculture ≠ jProducts

761 b1 ≠ 81.1 ≠ iAdd to base number ≠ b338.17 ≠ ithe numbers following ≠ r63 ≠ iin ≠ d  
633 ≠ c638, ≠ ie.g., rice or seed rice ≠ e338.17318, ≠ iforestry ≠ e338.1749, ≠ i  
forest products ≠ e338.17498 ; ≠ ihowever,

761 b2 ≠ 81.2 ≠ ifor supply of timber in nature, see ≠ x333.7511;

761 b2 ≠ 81.3 ≠ i for demand for timber, see ≠ x333.7512

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a660.2844 ≠ hTechnology (Applied sciences) ≠ hChemical engineering and  
related technologies ≠ hGeneral topics in chemical engineering ≠ hSpecific types of  
chemical plant and specific activities in chemical plants ≠ hUnit operations and unit  
processes ≠ j Unit processes

761 b1 ≠ 81.1 ≠ iAdd to base number ≠ b660.2844 ≠ ithe numbers following ≠ r547.2 ≠ iin  
≠ d547.21 ≠ c547.29, ≠ ie.g., fermentation ≠ e660.28449 ; ≠ ihowever,

761 b3 ≠ 81.2 ≠ ipolymerization relocated from ≠ x660.28448 ≠ ito ≠ x668.92

[Note: The "however" is kept in the add or divide like portion rather than put at the  
front of the next portion to avoid puzzling users if the add portion is not displayed to  
the public while the class elsewhere or relocation portion is displayed.]

### 2 - Class elsewhere portion of a combined note

Value 2 indicates that the field contains the class elsewhere portion of a combined note.

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a333.852 ≠ c333.859 ≠ hSocial sciences ≠ hEconomics ≠ kEconomics of labor,  
finance, land, energy ≠ hEconomics of land and energy ≠ hSubsurface resources ≠ h  
Minerals ≠ jSpecific minerals

761 b1 ≠ 81.1 ≠ iAdd to base number ≠ b333.85 ≠ ithe numbers following ≠ r553 ≠ iin ≠ d  
553.2 ≠ c553.9, ≠ ie.g., tin ≠ e333.85453, ≠ iuranium ≠ e333.854932 ; ≠ ihowever,

761 b2 ≠ 81.2 ≠ ifor fossil fuels, see ≠ x333.82;

761 b2 ≠ 81.3 ≠ ifor groundwater, see ≠ x333.9104

### 3 - Relocation portion of a combined note

Value 3 indicates that the field contains the relocation portion of a combined note.

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ‡ a759.3 ‡ c759.8 ‡ hThe arts. Fine and decorative arts ‡ kFine and decorative arts ‡ hPainting and paintings ‡ hHistorical, geographic, persons treatment ‡ kGeographic treatment ‡ kEurope ‡ jMiscellaneous parts of Europe

761 b1 ‡ 81.1 ‡ iAdd to base number ‡ b759 ‡ i the numbers following ‡ z2 ‡ r4 ‡ iin notation ‡ z2 ‡ d43 ‡ c48 ‡ ifrom Table 2, e.g., painting and paintings of France ‡ e759.4 ; ‡ ihowever,

761 b3 ‡ 81.2 ‡ iindividual painters from countries of former Soviet Central Asia relocated from ‡ x759.7 ‡ ito ‡ x759.9584 ‡ c759.9587

## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

### ‡ a - Number where instructions are found—single number or beginning number of span

Subfield ‡ a identifies the classification number (single number or beginning number of span) under which an add table or further instructions are found.

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ‡ z3B ‡ a30872 ‡ hSubdivisions for the Arts, for Individual Literatures, for Specific Literary Forms ‡ hSubdivisions for Works by or about More than One Author ‡ kSpecific forms ‡ hFiction ‡ kFiction of specific scopes and kinds ‡ hSpecific kinds of fiction ‡ hAdventure fiction ‡ jDetective, mystery, suspense, spy, Gothic fiction

761 b0 ‡ iAdd as instructed under ‡ a102 ‡ c108

### ‡ b - Base number

Subfield ‡ b contains the base classification number to which one or more other numbers will be added.

084 0b ‡ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ‡ aNB201 ‡ cNB1114 ‡ hSculpture ‡ hHistory ‡ jSpecial countries

761 b0 ‡ iAdd country number in table to ‡ bNB200

762 bb ‡ zN5 ‡ imodified

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ‡ a025.06001 ‡ c025.06999 ‡ hGeneralities ‡ hLibrary and information sciences ‡ hOperations of libraries, archives, information centers ‡ hInformation storage and retrieval systems devoted to specific disciplines and subjects ‡ jSpecific disciplines and subjects

761 b0 ‡ iAdd to base number ‡ b025.06 ‡ inotation ‡ d001 ‡ c999, ‡ ie.g., MEDLINE ‡ e025.0661

### ‡ c - Classification number—ending number of span

Subfield ‡ c identifies the ending number of a classification number span. The beginning number of the span may be in subfield ‡ a, ‡ d, ‡ e, ‡ r or ‡ x.

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ‡ a725.1 ‡ hThe arts. Fine and decorative arts ‡ kFine and decorative arts ‡ hArchitecture ‡ kSpecific aspects of architecture ‡ kSpecific types of structures ‡ hPublic structures ‡ jGovernment buildings

761 b0 ‡ iAdd as instructed under ‡ a721 ‡ c729

### ‡ d - Divided like number

Subfield ‡ d contains the classification number or span that will be used as the pattern for

constructing another classification number. If the number is part of a classification number span, subfield  $\neq c$  is used for the ending number in the span.

084 0b  $\neq$  alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb  $\neq$  aND1314  $\neq$  cND1314.6  $\neq$  hPainting  $\neq$  hSpecial subjects of painting  $\neq$  hPortraits.  
Group portraits. Self-portraits  $\neq$  hHistory  $\neq$  hSpecial countries  $\neq$  hEurope  $\neq$  jGreat Britain

761 b0  $\neq$  iDivide like  $\neq$  dND1309  $\neq$  cND1309.6

084 0b  $\neq$  addc  $\neq$  c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb  $\neq$  a016  $\neq$  hGeneralities  $\neq$  hBibliography  $\neq$  kBibliographies and catalogs of individuals, of works by specific classes of authors, of anonymous and pseudonymous works, of works from specific places, of works on specific subjects or in specific disciplines  $\neq$  j Bibliographies and catalogs of works on specific subjects or in specific disciplines

761 b0  $\neq$  iAdd to base number  $\neq$  b016 notation  $\neq$  d001  $\neq$  c999,  $\neq$  ie.g., bibliographies of philosophy  $\neq$  e016.1,  $\neq$  i of novels  $\neq$  e016.80883

#### $\neq e$ - Example class number

Subfield  $\neq e$  contains an example of the classification number resulting from the add or divide like instruction.

084 0b  $\neq$  addc  $\neq$  c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb  $\neq$  a780.0001  $\neq$  c780.0999  $\neq$  hThe arts. Fine and decorative  
arts  $\neq$  hMusic  $\neq$  jRelation of music to other subjects

761 b0  $\neq$  iAdd to base number  $\neq$  b780.0  $\neq$  ithree-digit notation  $\neq$  d001  $\neq$  c999,  $\neq$  ie.g., music and literature  $\neq$  e780.08,  $\neq$  imusic and Welsh literature  $\neq$  e780.0891  $\neq$  i(not  $\neq$  n780.089166),  $\neq$  imusic and the performing arts  $\neq$  e780.079  $\neq$  i(not  $\neq$  n780.07902)

#### $\neq f$ - Facet designator

Subfield  $\neq f$  contains extra character(s) to be added to classification numbers that indicate facets.

084 0b  $\neq$  addc  $\neq$  c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb  $\neq$  a327.123  $\neq$  c327.129  $\neq$  hSocial sciences  $\neq$  hPolitical science (Politics and government)  $\neq$  hInternational relations  $\neq$  hForeign policy and specific topics in international relations  $\neq$  hEspionage and subversion  $\neq$  jEspionage and subversion by specific nations

761 b0  $\neq$  iAdd to base number  $\neq$  b327.12  $\neq$  inotation  $\neq$  z2  $\neq$  d3  $\neq$  c9  $\neq$  ifrom Table 2, e.g., espionage by France  $\neq$  e327.1244 ;  $\neq$  ithen for espionage and subversion by that country in another area add  $\neq$  f0  $\neq$  iand to the result add notation  $\neq$  z2  $\neq$  d1  $\neq$  c9  $\neq$  ifrom Table 2, e.g., espionage by France in Communist bloc  $\neq$  e327.124401717

761 b0  $\neq$  iAdd  $\neq$  f00  $\neq$  ifor standard subdivisions; see instructions at beginning of Table 1

#### $\neq i$ - Explanatory text

Subfield  $\neq i$  contains the explanatory text of the instruction.

084 0b  $\neq$  alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb  $\neq$  aQC793.5.G552  $\neq$  cQC793.5.G5529  $\neq$  hPhysics  $\neq$  hNuclear and particle physics. Atomic energy. Radioactivity  $\neq$  hElementary particle physics  $\neq$  hSpecial nuclear and subnuclear particles, antiparticles, and families of particles, A-Z  $\neq$  jGluons

761 b0  $\neq$  iSubarrange like  $\neq$  dQC793.5.A22  $\neq$  cQC793.5.A229



- 084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb ≠ a880.1 ≠ c888 ≠ hLiterature (Belles-lettres) and rhetoric ≠ kLiteratures of specific languages and language families ≠ hLiteratures of Hellenic languages. Classical Greek literature ≠ jSubdivisions of classical Greek literature  
 761 b0 ≠ iAdd to base number ≠ b88 ≠ ias instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., a collection of classical Greek poetry ≠ e881.008; ≠ ihowever, observe the special interpretations of and exceptions to notation from Table 3 that appear below, e.g., collections of classical Greek poetry of the medieval and Byzantine periods ≠ e881.0208, ≠ icritical appraisal of classical Greek epic poetry and fiction of the ancient period ≠ e883.0109

#### ≠ n - Negative example class number

Subfield ≠ n contains an example of the incorrect classification number for the topic used to illustrate the add or divide like instructions.

- 084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb ≠ a780.0001 ≠ c780.0999 ≠ hThe arts. Fine and decorative arts ≠ hMusic ≠ jRelation of music to other subjects  
 761 b0 ≠ iAdd to base number ≠ b780.0 ≠ ithree-digit notation ≠ d001 ≠ c999, ≠ ie.g., music and literature ≠ e780.08, ≠ imusic and Welsh literature ≠ e780.0891 ≠ i(not ≠ n780.089166), ≠ imusic and the performing arts ≠ e780.079 ≠ i(not ≠ n780.07902)

#### ≠ r - Root number

Subfield ≠ r contains the initial digits of the pattern number or span when these digits are not added. If this subfield is present, subfield ≠ d must also be present to specify the digits that are added.

- 084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb ≠ a014 ≠ hGeneralities ≠ hBibliography ≠ kBibliographies and catalogs of individuals, of works by specific classes of authors, of anonymous and pseudonymous works, of works from specific places, of works on specific subjects or in specific disciplines ≠ jBibliographies and catalogs of anonymous and pseudonymous works  
 761 b0 ≠ iAdd to base number ≠ b014 ≠ ithe numbers following ≠ r03 ≠ iin ≠ d031 ≠ c039 ≠ i (but not notation 02 for books of miscellaneous facts), e.g., bibliographies and catalogs of anonymous and pseudonymous works in French ≠ e014.41

#### ≠ x - Other classification number

Subfield ≠ x contains classification numbers other than those that belong in one of the other defined subfields. If the number is part of a classification number span, subfield ≠ c is used for the ending number in the span.

- 084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb ≠ a755 ≠ hThe arts. Fine and decorative arts ≠ kFine and decorative arts ≠ hPainting and paintings ≠ klconography ≠ jReligion  
 761 b1 ≠ 81.1 ≠ iAdd to base number ≠ b755 ≠ ithe numbers following ≠ r704.948 ≠ iin ≠ d704.9482 ≠ c704.9489, ≠ ie.g., paintings of Holy Family ≠ e755.56 ≠ i; however,  
 761 b2 ≠ 81.2 ≠ ifor individual painters, see ≠ x759.1 ≠ c759.9

#### ≠ z - Table identification

Subfield ≠ z identifies the table identification to which a classification number recorded in field 761 belongs. Subfield ≠ z is not repeatable; it is input before the classification number to which it refers.

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ‡ z4 ‡ a24 ‡ hSubdivisions of Individual Languages ‡ kDescription and analysis of the standard form of the language ‡ hEtymology of the standard form of the language ‡ jForeign elements

761 b0 ‡ iAdd to ‡ z4 ‡ b24 ‡ inotation ‡ z6 ‡ d1 ‡ c9 ‡ ifrom Table 6, e.g., French words in the language ‡ z4 ‡ e2441, ‡ iFrench words in English ‡ e422.441

‡ 6 - Linkage

‡ 8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of these subfields in Appendix A.

## SCHEME-SPECIFIC CONVENTIONS

**Library of Congress Classification** - This field may be used to record divide like notes only if it is impractical to indicate the subarrangement either in separate classification schedule or table records.

**Dewey Decimal Classification** - For the *DDC*, this field includes instructions about how many zeros to add for standard subdivisions. In these cases, the zeros are recorded in subfield ‡ f (Facet designator). This field does not include general advice about number building, such as that at the start of *DDC* Table 3; such general advice is recorded in fields 683 (Application Instruction Note) or 684 (Auxiliary Instruction Note).

In *DDC*, a single add note may be a combination of an add note and a class elsewhere note or a relocation note, or (rarely) all three. The *DDC* add notes at 659.29001-659.29999, 739.222-739.225 and T7-06 are examples of notes with all three types. A system may display all three portions together in one paragraph, as is done in the printed volumes; it may display them as separate but consecutive notes; or it may suppress display of the add portion while displaying the class elsewhere or relocation part.

In *DDC*, subfield ‡ d (Divided like number) is used for pattern numbers or spans when either a complete number or an incomplete number is added (concatenated). If digits are dropped from the beginning of the pattern number or span and only the remaining digits added, subfield ‡ r (Root number) must be present to specify the digits dropped.



## 762 Table Identification (R)

### First Indicator

Table application sequence

- First
- 2 Second
- 3 Third
- 4 Fourth

### Second Indicator

Undefined

- Undefined

### Subfield Codes

- ⌘i Explanatory text (R)
- ⌘z Table number (NR)

- ⌘6 Linkage (NR)
- ⌘8 Field link and sequence number (R)

## FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains the identification of a table which provides an arrangement for or additions to the classification number or number span recorded in field 153. Field 762 is repeated for each table if more than one table applies to the classification number or number span recorded in field 153. If the classification number in field 153 is itself part of a table, the identification of the table to which the classification number belongs is recorded in subfield ⌘z of field 153.

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

### ■ INDICATORS

#### First Indicator - Table application sequence

##### ▫ - First

Value ▫ indicates that the table recorded in ⌘z should be applied first in building the classification number.

##### 2 - Second

Value 2 indicates that the table recorded in ⌘z should be applied second in building the classification number.

##### 3 - Third

Value 3 indicates that the table recorded in ⌘z should be applied third in building the classification number.

##### 4 - Fourth

Value 4 indicates that the table recorded in ⌘z should be applied fourth in building the classification number.

#### Second Indicator - Undefined

The second indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (▫).

## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

### ⊕ i - Explanatory text

Subfield ⊕ i contains any explanatory text relating to the table.

084 0b ⊕ alcc *[Library of Congress Classification]*  
 153 bb ⊕ aHD311 ⊕ cHD1130.5 ⊕ hIndustries. Land use. Labor ⊕ hLand use ⊕ hBy region or  
 country ⊕ jOther regions or countries  
 762 bb ⊕ zH7 ⊕ imodified

### ⊕ z - Table number

Subfield ⊕ z contains the identification of the table by which a classification number or span in field 153 (Classification Number) is further subarranged. Subfield ⊕ z is not repeatable; it is input before the classification number to which it refers.

084 0b ⊕ alcc *[Library of Congress Classification]*  
 153 bb ⊕ aNB201 ⊕ cNB1114 ⊕ hSculpture ⊕ hHistory ⊕ jSpecial countries  
 762 bb ⊕ zN5 ⊕ imodified

084 0b ⊕ anlm ⊕ c4th ed., rev. *[National Library of Medicine Classification]*  
 153 bb ⊕ aWT29 ⊕ hGeriatrics. Chronic disease ⊕ jDay care centers and programs  
 762 bb ⊕ zG

### ⊕ 6 - Linkage

### ⊕ 8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of these subfields in Appendix A.

---

## 763 Internal Subarrangement or Add Table Entry (R)

### First Indicator

#### Classification number validity

- 0 Not a classification number entry
- 1 Standard valid classification number
- 2 Standard invalid classification number
- 3 Optional valid classification number
- 4 Optional invalid classification number
- 5 Obsolete classification number

### Second Indicator

#### Type of classification number

- 0 Single number
- 1 Defined number span
- 2 Summary number span
- 8 Other

### Subfield Codes

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| ≠a Classification number—single number or beginning number of span (R) | ≠m Manual note (NR)                        |
| ≠b Base number (NR)  | ≠n Number where instructions are found (R) |
| ≠c Classification number—ending number of span (R)                     | ≠p Corresponding classification field (R)  |
| ≠d Divided like number (R)   | ≠r Root number (R)                         |
| ≠e Example class number (R)  | ≠s See reference (R)                       |
| ≠h Caption hierarchy (R)   | ≠x Other classification number (R)         |
| ≠i Explanatory text (R)  | ≠y Type of division (R)                    |
| ≠j Caption (NR)  | ≠z Table identification (R)                |
| ≠k Summary number span caption hierarchy (R)                           | ≠6 Linkage (NR)                            |
|  | ≠8 Field link and sequence number (NR)     |

## FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains one entry in an internal classification subarrangement or add table. The entry may consist of a classification number and its associated caption, a note, or a see reference. A classification number that is part of an external table is recorded in field 153 (Classification Number) with the table identification recorded in subfield ≠z (Table identification) of that field. An internal table may also be coded as an external one and identified in subfield ≠z of field 153 of the record to which it applies.

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

### ■ INDICATORS

#### First Indicator - Classification number validity

The first indicator position contains a value that specifies whether field 763 contains a standard valid, standard invalid, optional valid, optional invalid, or obsolete classification number. A standard classification number is one from the standard part of the schedules or tables; it may be valid or invalid for use in a bibliographic or authority record. An optional classification number is one which is provided as an optional alternative to the standard part of the schedule or tables; it may be valid or invalid for use in a bibliographic or authority record. An obsolete classification number is one that had been used in an earlier edition, but has been relocated to another number

or discontinued. These values generally contain the same information for the classification number in an internal subarrangement or add table entry as the codes contained in 008/08 (Classification validity) and 008/09 (Standard or optional designation) do for the classification number in field 153 (Classification Number).

**0 - Not a classification number entry**

Value 0 indicates that the field does not contain a classification number. Although the field may contain classification numbers embedded in explanatory text, it is not considered a classification number entry and is assigned value 0. When value 0 is used, subfield  $\neq$  a is not present in the field.

*Library of Congress Classification - subarrangement under HV1796.A-HV1796.Z, notation [1]:*

**763 08**  $\neq$  **81.3**  $\neq$  iIncluding state documents  $\neq$  **p680**

*Dewey Decimal Classification - table under 616.1-616.9, notation 025:*

**763 08**  $\neq$  **81.34**  $\neq$  iClass here comprehensive works on emergency therapy for specific diseases or kinds of diseases  $\neq$  **p680**

**1 - Standard valid classification number**

Value 1 indicates that the field contains a standard valid classification number.

*Library of Congress Classification - subarrangement under HV9501-HV9920.5:*

**763 10**  $\neq$  **81.8**  $\neq$  **a3**  $\neq$  jCollected works (nonserial)  $\neq$  **p153**

*Dewey Decimal Classification - table under 616.1-616.9:*

**763 10**  $\neq$  **81.33**  $\neq$  **a025**  $\neq$  hSpecial topics  $\neq$  jMedical emergencies  $\neq$  **p153**

**2 - Standard invalid classification number**

Value 2 indicates that the field contains a standard invalid classification number.

*Dewey Decimal Classification - table under 616.1-616.9:*

**763 20**  $\neq$  **81.15**  $\neq$  **a[00846]**  $\neq$  hHistory and description with respect to kinds of persons  $\neq$  hPersons in specific stages of adulthood  $\neq$  jPersons in late adulthood  $\neq$  **p453**

**3 - Optional valid classification number**

Value 3 indicates that the field contains an optional valid classification number.

*Dewey Decimal Classification - table under (789.3-789.9):*

**763 30**  $\neq$  **81.6**  $\neq$  **a016**  $\neq$  hGeneral principles, stylistic influences of other traditions of music, musical forms  $\neq$  jStylistic influences of other traditions of music  $\neq$  **p153**

**4 - Optional invalid classification number**

Value 4 indicates that the field contains an optional invalid classification number.

*Dewey Decimal Classification - table under (789.21-789.29):*

**763 41**  $\neq$  **81.6**  $\neq$  **a[0093**  $\neq$  **c0099]**  $\neq$  hHistorical, geographic, persons treatment  $\neq$  jTreatment by specific continents, countries, localities  $\neq$  **p453**

**5 - Obsolete classification number**

Value 5 indicates that the field contains a previously valid classification number that is no longer used in the classification scheme and edition cited in field 084 (Classification Scheme and Edition).



*Dewey Decimal Classification - table under 721-729:*

**763 50** ≠ **81.16** ≠ **a[042]** ≠ **h**Special topics ≠ **j**Architecture for persons with disabilities ≠ **i**  
Relocated to ≠ **x087** ≠ **p685**

## **Second Indicator - Type of classification number**

The second indicator position contains a value that specifies whether field 763 contains a single number, a defined number span, or a summary number span. The definitions for each value are the same as those in 008/07 (Type of number).

### **0 - Single number**

Value 0 indicates that the 763 field contains a single classification number.

*Library of Congress Classification - subarrangement under HG2701-HG3542.7:*

**763 10** ≠ **81.19** ≠ **a19.Z** ≠ **j**By region, A-Z ≠ **p153**

*Dewey Decimal Classification - table under 820.1-828:*

**763 10** ≠ **81.4** ≠ **a3** ≠ **j**Elizabethan period, 1558-1625 ≠ **p153**

### **1 - Defined number span**

Value 1 indicates that the 763 field contains a classification number span that is defined by another subarrangement or instructions.

*Library of Congress Classification - subarrangement under HV7315-HV7400:*

**763 11** ≠ **81.2** ≠ **a.A1** ≠ **c.A5** ≠ **j**Periodicals. Serials ≠ **p153**

*Dewey Decimal Classification - table under 616.1-616.9:*

**763 11** ≠ **81.56** ≠ **a062** ≠ **c069** ≠ **h**Therapy ≠ **j**Other therapies ≠ **p153**

### **2 - Summary number span**

Value 2 indicates that the 763 field contains a classification number span consisting of the first and last classification number of the topics subordinate to the caption in subfield ≠ **j** (Caption).

*Library of Congress Classification - subarrangement under HD1781-HD2210:*

**763 12** ≠ **81.7** ≠ **a2.5** ≠ **c2.7** ≠ **j**Biography ≠ **p153**

*Dewey Decimal Classification - subarrangement under 362-363:*

**763 12** ≠ **81.1** ≠ **a6** ≠ **c8** ≠ **j**Specific forms of action ≠ **p153**

### **8 - Other**

Value 8 indicates that the 763 field (1) contains a type of classification number for which none of the other defined values is appropriate or (2) does not contain a classification number.

*Library of Congress Classification - subarrangement under HD1781-HD2210:*

**763 08** ≠ **81.14** ≠ **i5** nos.

*Dewey Decimal Classification - Manual note related to add table under 616.1-616.9:*

**763 18** ≠ **81.61** ≠ **a071** ≠ **ivs.** ≠ **a01** ≠ **j**Etiology vs. Microbiology ≠ **p684**



## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

### ≠ a - Classification number—single number or beginning number of span

Subfield ≠a contains a single classification number or the beginning number of a span contained in an internal subarrangement entry. The classification number may be partial (such as digits to be added or a Cutter number) or be represented only by an indication of sequencing. Subfield ≠a is not used for classification numbers that may be embedded in the text of a note.

*Library of Congress Classification - subarrangement under HV7641-HV7895:*

**763 10≠81.3≠a1.A≠c1.Z≠j**Ministry or department≠p153

*Dewey Decimal Classification - table under 880.1-888:*

**763 10≠81.2≠a1≠j**Ancient period to ca. 499≠p153

### ≠ b - Base number

Subfield ≠b contains the base classification number to which one or more other numbers will be added.

*Dewey Decimal Classification - table under 341.2-341.7, notation 026:*

**763 08≠81.71≠i**Add to base number≠b026≠ithe numbers following≠r341.026≠iin≠d 341.0261≠c341.0268,≠ie.g., multilateral treaties≠e0265≠p761

*[Because it is part of the internal table, the add note is recorded in field 763, rather than in 761 (Add or Divide Like Instructions)]*

### ≠ c - Classification number—ending number of span

Subfield ≠c contains the ending number of a classification number span contained in an internal subarrangement entry. The classification number may be partial (such as digits to be added or a Cutter number) or be represented only by an indication of sequencing.

*Dewey Decimal Classification - table under (789.21-789.29):*

**763 31≠81.4≠a00901≠c00905≠h**Historical, geographic, persons treatment≠jHistorical periods≠p153

### ≠ d - Divided like number

Subfield ≠d contains the classification number or span that will be used as the pattern for constructing another classification number.

*Dewey Decimal Classification - table under 616.1-616.9, notation 07:*

**763 08≠81.81≠i**Add to≠b07≠ithe numbers following≠r616.07≠iin≠d616.071≠c 616.079,≠ie.g., etiology≠e071,≠idiagnosis≠e075

### ≠ e - Example class number

Subfield ≠e contains an example of the classification number resulting from an add or divide like instruction.

*Dewey Decimal Classification - table under 352-354, notation 21:*

**763 08≠81.12** Add to≠b21≠ithe numbers following≠r352.1≠iin≠d352.105  
≠c352.19,≠ie.g., international administration≠e211≠p761

### ≠ h - Caption hierarchy

Subfield ≠h contains a caption for each higher level of the caption hierarchy that precedes the caption in subfield ≠j (Caption) that is associated with a classification number as part of an internal subarrangement entry. A caption for a classification number in a summary number span

in the *Dewey Decimal Classification* is contained in subfield  $\neq$  k (Summary number span caption hierarchy).

*Library of Congress Classification - subarrangement under HD311-HD1130.5:*

763 10  $\neq$  81.9  $\neq$  a6  $\neq$  hHistory  $\neq$  h19th and 20th centuries  $\neq$  j1945-  $\neq$  p153

*Dewey Decimal Classification - table under 616.1-616.9:*

763 10  $\neq$  81.27  $\neq$  a0232  $\neq$  hSpecial topics  $\neq$  hPersonnel  $\neq$  jPhysicians  $\neq$  p153

#### $\neq$ i - Explanatory text

Subfield  $\neq$  i contains explanatory text that is part of an internal classification subarrangement.

*Library of Congress Classification - subarrangement under HD1781-HD2210, notation [7]:*

763 08  $\neq$  iUnder each country:

*Dewey Decimal Classification - table under 820.1-828, notation 8:*

763 08  $\neq$  81.19  $\neq$  iClass here 19th century  $\neq$  p680

#### $\neq$ j - Caption

Subfield  $\neq$  j contains the caption for the classification number or span that is part of an internal subarrangement entry.

*Library of Congress Classification - subarrangement under E186.6:*

763 10  $\neq$  81.2  $\neq$  a.A1  $\neq$  c.A69  $\neq$  jOfficial publications  $\neq$  p153

*Dewey Decimal Classification - table under 616.1-616.9:*

763 10  $\neq$  81.62  $\neq$  a08  $\neq$  jPsychosomatic medicine  $\neq$  p153

#### $\neq$ k - Summary number span caption hierarchy

Subfield  $\neq$  k contains the caption at a level higher than the last for a summary number span in the *Dewey Decimal Classification* scheme. Caption hierarchies for a single classification number, defined number span, or other type of summary number span are contained in subfield  $\neq$  h.

*Dewey Decimal Classification - subarrangement under 362-363:*

763 10  $\neq$  81.3  $\neq$  a62  $\neq$  kSpecific forms of action  $\neq$  hControl  $\neq$  jStandards

#### $\neq$ m - Manual note

Subfield  $\neq$  m contains a note from a classification manual that is part of an internal classification subarrangement. A reference from a schedule internal subarrangement to a manual is recorded in subfield  $\neq$  i (Explanatory text).

*Dewey Decimal Classification - Manual note at 617: add table: 06:*

763 08  $\neq$  81.5  $\neq$  mDo not use  $\neq$  x06  $\neq$  mby itself under numbers whose meaning is limited to surgery, since surgery is a therapy. [. . .]  $\neq$  p684

#### $\neq$ n - Number where instructions are found

Subfield  $\neq$  n identifies the classification number or span under which an add table or further instructions are found.

*Dewey Decimal Classification - table under 617, notation 001-007:*

763 08  $\neq$  81.2  $\neq$  iAs modified under  $\neq$  n616.1  $\neq$  c616.9  $\neq$  p683

**≠ p - Corresponding classification field**

Subfield ≠ p contains the field tag of the field in which the internal subarrangement data would appear if it were not part of an internal subarrangement. This subfield allows for an easier conversion from an internal subarrangement to an external table if desired. It may also be used to highlight specific types of fields for display or printing. If it cannot be determined which field the data would fall into if it were not part of an internal subarrangement, this subfield may be omitted. If the data is a reference and can be recorded in field 253 or 453, the choice of which tag to use in subfield ≠ p is made according to how the text reads, not how it might read if it were made into a tracing. For example, "do not use; class in" would be a 253 as it now appears. If the data could be recorded in either field 153 or 253/353 choose 153. Subfield ≠ p may be repeated for option notes to show that the note would appear in field 683 (Application Instruction Note) or in some other field if it were not an option.

*Library of Congress Classification - subarrangement under E186.6:*

763 10≠81.2≠a.A1≠c.A69≠jOfficial publications≠p153

*Dewey Decimal Classification - table under 616.1-616.9, notation [00724]:*

763 08≠81.9≠iDo not use; class in≠s027≠p253

**≠ r - Root number**

Subfield ≠ r contains the initial digits of the pattern number or span when these digits are not added. If this subfield is present, subfield ≠ d must also be present to specify the digits that are added.

*Dewey Decimal Classification - table under 930-990, notation 0091-0098:*

763 08≠81.16≠iAdd to≠b009≠ithe numbers following≠z2≠r1≠iin notation≠z2≠d11≠c18≠ifrom table 2, e.g., urban regions≠e009732≠p761

**≠ s - See reference**

Subfield ≠ s contains the classification number to which a see reference in an internal classification subarrangement refers.

*Library of Congress Classification - subarrangement under HF3221-HF4040.7, notation [3]:*

763 08≠81.19≠iFor works on policy, see≠sHF1451-HF1647≠p253

*Dewey Decimal Classification - table under 616.1-616.9, notation [00724]:*

763 08≠81.9≠iDo not use; class in≠s027≠p253

**≠ x - Other classification number**

Subfield ≠ x contains classification numbers other than those that belong in one of the other defined subfields.

*Dewey Decimal Classification - table under 264.04-264.09, notation 08:*

763 08≠81.7≠iAdd to≠b08≠ithe numbers following≠r265≠iin≠d265.1≠c265.7, ≠ie.g., the ceremony of baptism≠e081,≠ithe ceremony of baptism in the United Methodist Church≠e264.076081;≠ihowever,≠p761

763 08≠81.8≠ifor Holy Communion (Eucharist, Lord's Supper, Mass), see≠x036≠p761

*Dewey Decimal Classification - table under 292-299, notation 1-9:*

763 08≠81.12≠iAdd the numbers following≠r291≠iin≠d291.1≠c291.9,≠ie.g., organizations≠e65≠i[formerly≠z1≠x06]≠p761



### ≠ y - Type of division

Subfield ≠ y contains the type of division to which a table specified in subfield ≠ z applies.

084 0b ≠ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ≠ aG6043 ≠ hMaps ≠ hBy region or country ≠ hEastern Hemisphere. Eurasia, Africa, etc. ≠ hEurope ≠ hCentral Europe ≠ hSwitzerland ≠ jCantons, A-Z

763 08 ≠ zG6041.S ≠ yhistory

084 0b ≠ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ≠ aNC1762.G82A ≠ cNC1762.G82Z ≠ hDrawing. Design. Illustration ≠ hCaricature. Pictorial humor and satire ≠ hHistory ≠ hSpecial countries ≠ hOther, A-Z ≠ hGuam ≠ jSpecial artists, A-Z

763 08 ≠ yindividual artists ≠ zN7

### ≠ z - Table identification

Subfield ≠ z contains the identification of the table to which a classification number recorded in field 763 belongs. For a classification number span, subfield ≠ z is given only once, before the first number.

*Dewey Decimal Classification - table under 930-990, notation 0099:*

763 08 ≠ 81.20 ≠ iClass persons of a specific period in ≠ s01 ≠ c09, ≠ iplus notation ≠ z1 ≠ a092 ≠ ifrom Table 1; ≠ p 253

763 08 ≠ 81.21 ≠ iclass historians and historiographers in ≠ s007202; ≠ p253

*Dewey Decimal Classification - table under --093-099 in Table 1, notation 09:*

763 08 ≠ 81.11 ≠ iAdd to ≠ b09 ≠ ithe numbers following ≠ z1 ≠ r09 ≠ iin notation ≠ z1 ≠ d090 ≠ c099 ≠ ifrom Table 1, e.g., 20th century ≠ e0904, ≠ irural regions ≠ e091734 ≠ p761

### ≠ 6 - Linkage

### ≠ 8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of these subfields in Appendix A.

## ■ EXAMPLES

### Example 1

084 0b ≠ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ≠ aHE394.A ≠ cHE394.Z ≠ hTransportation and communication ≠ hWater transportation ≠ hWaterways ≠ hBy region or country ≠ hUnited States ≠ jRiver improvement. By name of river

763 08 ≠ iUnder each:

763 10 ≠ 81.1 ≠ a.x ≠ jPeriodicals. Serials ≠ p153

763 10 ≠ 81.2 ≠ a.x3 ≠ jGeneral works ≠ p153

763 10 ≠ 81.3 ≠ a.x4 ≠ jGeneral special ≠ p153

*Display example:*

Transportation and communication

Water transportation

Waterways

By region or country

United States

HE394.A-.Z River improvement. By name of river

Under each:

- .x Periodicals. Serials
- .x3 General works
- .x4 General special

### Example 2

084 0b ‡ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153 bb ‡ aNK101 ‡ cNK377 ‡ hDecorative arts. Applied arts. Decoration and ornament  
‡ hStudy and teaching ‡ jSpecial countries

761 b0 ‡ iAdd country number in table to ‡ bNK100

762 bb ‡ zN3

763 08 ‡ iUnder each:

763 08 ‡ zNK101/1 ‡ y3 number countries

763 08 ‡ zNK101/2 ‡ y1 number or decimal number countries

763 08 ‡ zNK101/3 ‡ yCutter number countries

*[Separate table records are created for each number in the internal table. The use of field 763 instead of field 762 allows for the display of the table under NK101.]*

Separate table records:

008/06 b [table record]

084 0b ‡ alcc

153 bb ‡ zNK101/1 ‡ a1 ‡ c3 ‡ jTable for 3 number countries

008/06 b [table record]

084 0b ‡ alcc

153 bb ‡ zNK101/1 ‡ a1 ‡ hTable for 3 number countries ‡ jGeneral works

008/06 b [table record]

084 0b ‡ alcc

153 bb ‡ zNK101/2 ‡ a.A1 ‡ c.Z9Z ‡ jTable for 1 number or decimal number countries

008/06 b [table record]

084 0b ‡ alcc

153 bb ‡ zNK101/2 ‡ a.A1 ‡ hTable for 1 number or decimal number countries ‡ jGeneral works

...

*Display example:*

Decorative Arts

Applied Arts

Decoration and Ornament

Study and teaching

NK101-NK377 Special countries (Table N3)

*Add country number in table to NK100*

*Under each:*

TABLE NK101/1

1 General works

2.A-Z Special divisions, regions, A-Z

3.A-Z Special cities, A-Z

TABLE NK101/2

Table for 1 number or decimal number countries

.A1 General works

.A2A-.Z8Z Special divisions, regions, A-Z

...



**Example 3**

- 084 0b + addc + c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb + a860.1 + c868 + hLiterature (Belles-lettres) and rhetoric + kLiteratures of specific languages and language families + hLiteratures of Spanish and Portuguese languages. Spanish literature + jSubdivisions of Spanish literature  
 680 1b + iClass here Judeo-Spanish (Ladino), Papiamento literature  
 761 b1 + iExcept for modifications shown under specific entries, add to base number + b86 + ias instructed at beginning of Table 3, e.g., a collection of Spanish poetry + e861.008  
 683 0b + 81.1 + iUse the following period table for literature in Spanish language from all countries and continents, for comprehensive works on literature in Spanish language  
 763 08 + 81.2 + iPERIOD TABLE FOR SPANISH  
 763 10 + 81.3 + a1 + jEarly period to 1369 + p153  
 763 08 + 81.4 + iClass here 14th century + p680  
 763 08 + 81.5 + iFor 1369-1399, see + s2 + p253  
 763 10 + 81.6 + a2 + j1369-1516 + p153  
 763 10 + 81.7 + a3 + jGolden Age, 1516-1699 + p153  
 763 10 + 81.8 + a4 + j1700-1799 + p153  
 763 10 + 81.9 + a5 + j1800-1899 + p153  
 763 10 + 81.10 + a6 + j1900-1999 + p153  
 763 10 + 81.11 + a62 + h1900-1999 + j1900-1945 + p153  
 763 10 + 81.13 + a64 + h1900-1999 + j1945-1999 + p153  
 763 10 + 81.14 + a7 + j2000- + p153  
 763 08 + 81.15 + iClass comprehensive works in + x860 + p253  
 763 08 + 81.16 + iSee also + x849.9 + ifor Catalan literature + p353  
 763 08 + 81.17 + i(Option: Distinguish Spanish-language literatures of specific countries by initial letters, e.g., literature of Chile Ch860, of Colombia Co860, of Mexico M860 [or, of all American countries A860], of Spain S860; or class literatures not requiring local emphasis in + x868.99. + ilf literatures are identified by one of these methods, assign the optional period numbers given below for literature of American countries; otherwise, assign the period numbers given above for all Spanish-language literatures. Other options are described under + x810 + c890  
 763 08 + 81.18 + i(OPTIONAL PERIOD TABLE FOR SPANISH  
 763 08 + 81.19 + i(For American countries  
 763 30 + 81.20 + a(1 + jColonial and revolutionary period, 1519-1826 + p683  
 763 30 + 81.21 + a(2 + j1826-1888 + p683  
 763 08 + 81.22 + iClass here 19th century + p680 + p683  
 763 08 + 81.23 + iFor 1800-1826, see + s1;  
 763 08 + 81.24 + ifor 1888-1899, see + s3  
 763 30 + 81.25 + a(3 + j1888-1909 + p683  
 763 30 + 81.26 + a(4 + j1910-1999 + p683  
 763 30 + 81.27 + a(42 + h1910-1990 + j1910-1945 + p683  
 763 30 + 81.28 + a(44 + h1910-1990 + j1945-1999 + p683  
 763 30 + 81.29 + a(5 + j2000- ) + p683

**Example 4**

- 084 0b + addc + c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb + a617 + hTechnology (Applied sciences) + hMedical sciences. Medicine + jMiscellaneous branches of medicine. Surgery [. . .]  
 763 11 + 81.1 + a001 + c007 + jStandard subdivisions + p153  
 763 08 + 81.2 + iAs modified under + x616.1 + c616.9 + p683 [. . .]  
 763 10 + 81.3 + a06 + jTherapy + p153  
 763 08 + 81.4 + iClass here rehabilitative therapy + p680

- 763 08 81.5 iClass comprehensive works on rehabilitative therapy and training for persons with a specific disease or kind of disease in s03 p253
- 763 08 81.6 iFor surgery, see s059 p253
- 763 08 81.7 iSee Manual at x617: iAdd table: x06 p684
- 763 08 81.8 mDo not use x06 mby itself under numbers whose meaning is limited to surgery, since surgery is a therapy. Subdivisions of x06 mare added to surgery numbers for specific physical therapies used in preparation for or rehabilitation from operative surgery, or for branches of surgery not limited to operative surgery, e.g., drug therapy in treatment of burns x617.11061. mNotation x06 mis used freely under numbers not limited to surgery, e.g., ophthalmological therapy x617.706. p684 [...]

*Display example:*

- 617 Miscellaneous branches of medicine      Surgery  
       001-007 Standard subdivisions  
           As modified under 616.1-616.9  
       [. . .]  
       06      Therapy  
           Class here rehabilitative therapy  
           Class comprehensive work on rehabilitative therapy and training for  
           Persons with a specific disease or kind of disease in 03  
           For surgery, see 059  
           See Manual at 617: Add table: 06

*From DDC Manual:*

- 617  
       06      Therapy  
           Do not use 06 by itself under numbers whose meaning is limited to surgery, since surgery is a therapy. Subdivisions of 06 are added to surgery numbers for specific physical therapies used in preparation for or rehabilitation from operative surgery, or for branches of surgery not limited to operative surgery, e.g., drug therapy in treatment of burns 617.11061. Notation 06 is used freely under numbers not limited to surgery, e.g., ophthalmological therapy 617.706.

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

If desired, an internal table in a classification scheme may be considered an external one and coded as such. Each entry in an internal subarrangement or add table is recorded in a separate 763 field (if coded as an external table, each is recorded in a separate 153 field in a separate record). The sequence number is assigned following the order of the subarrangement or table. Subfield 8 is always the first subfield in the field.

**Punctuation** - Input punctuation as data in field 763 for invalid or optional numbers, because it is not possible to indicate which portion of the number is invalid when one portion of a span is invalid.

## SCHEME-SPECIFIC CONVENTIONS

**Dewey Decimal Classification** - For the *Dewey Decimal Classification* value 1 (standard valid classification number) in the first indicator position is used when field 763 contains more than one classification number taken from the *DDC* Manual.

In *DDC*, subfield  $\neq$ d is used for pattern numbers or spans when either a complete number or an incomplete number is added (concatenated). If digits are dropped from the beginning of the pattern number or span and only the remaining digits added, subfield  $\neq$ r must be present to specify the digits dropped.

**Library of Congress Classification** - If an internal table is more than four lines or applies to more than 10 records (numbers), it is coded as an external table, i.e. each number to be applied is in field 153 of a separate table record (coded as "b" in 008/06 (Kind of record). If it is desirable to display it as an internal table, the table identification in field 153 subfield  $\neq$ z of each table record contains the classification number (or beginning number of a span) where it will display. If more than one table is required (for more than one subarrangement), "/1", "/2" etc. is appended to the table identification. In the record for the number(s) where the internal table is to appear, field 763 $\neq$ z also includes that table identification. The use of field 763 distinguishes the table identification as one that displays internally; an external table is identified in field 762 in the record to which it applies.

When separate table records are created for each number in an internal table, and field 763 is used as a reference to that table, it is not necessary to sequence the fields using subfield  $\neq$ 8.

---



## 764 Rule Identification (R)

### First Indicator

Undefined  
b Undefined

### Second Indicator

Undefined  
b Undefined

### Subfield Codes

⌘a Rule number (NR)  
⌘i Explanatory text (R)

⌘6 Linkage (NR)  
⌘8 Field link and sequence number (R)

## FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains an identification of a rule number that is used to build a number by applying a table. Each unique rule number may be translated into a sequence of steps used by a system to calculate the number in classification schemes that have multiple rules for building specific classification numbers.

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

### ■ INDICATORS

Both indicator positions are undefined; each contains a blank (b).

### ■ SUBFIELD CODES

#### ⌘a - Rule number

Subfield ⌘a identifies a particular rule that is used to apply a specific table to a classification number or span in a classification scheme that has multiple number building rules. The subfield is input in the first record in the table to which it applies, and may be used by a system to automatically calculate a synthesized number by following a sequence of steps.

153 bb⌘z KFA-KFZ⌘a1⌘c599.5⌘jUnited States - States and Territories

764 bb⌘a2⌘i Subtract 1 from number in 153/a and add table number to resulting number

#### ⌘i - Explanatory text

Subfield ⌘i contains the textual form of the rule as a sequence of steps to be followed in building a number from a table applied to a classification number span.

153 bb⌘zH3⌘a1⌘c295⌘jTables of geographical divisions

764 bb⌘a1⌘i Add table number to number in 153/a or to number specified in 761/b if present

#### ⌘6 - Linkage

#### ⌘8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of these subfields in Appendix A.



**SCHEME-SPECIFIC CONVENTION**

**Library of Congress Classification** - The data in subfield  $\neq$ a is a numeric, identifying a rule to be applied.

---

## 765 Synthesized Number Components (R)

### First Indicator

Field of number analyzed

- 0 153 field
- 1 Other field

### Second Indicator

Undefined

- b Undefined

### Subfield Codes

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| ‡a Number where instructions are found—single number or beginning number of span (R) | ‡t Digits added from internal subarrangement or add table (R)                      |
| ‡b Base number (R)   | ‡u Number being analyzed (R)   |
| ‡c Number where instructions are found—ending number of span (R)                     | ‡v Number in internal subarrangement or add table where instructions are found (R) |
| ‡f Facet designator (R)  | ‡w Table identification—internal subarrangement or add table (R)                   |
| ‡r Root number (R)   | ‡z Table identification (R)  |
| ‡s Digits added from classification number in schedule or external table (R)         | ‡6 Linkage (NR)  |
|  | ‡8 Field link and sequence number (R)  |

## FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains information about how a synthesized number or a portion of a synthesized number was built. It traces the different components of a synthesized number, showing the different portions of the number and where the add instructions are given. If a number was built using two or more instructions, a separate field 765 is given for each instruction.

A synthesized number in field 153 (Classification Number) may be identified by code b in 008/12 (Synthesized number indication). Synthesized numbers may also appear in other fields.

The information in this field is primarily intended to serve as a tracing of how classification numbers are synthesized to assist classifiers. It facilitates computer manipulation of synthesized numbers, both for validation that the numbers have been synthesized correctly and for index-building, to allow searching every use of a specific number.

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

### ■ INDICATORS

#### First Indicator - Field of number analyzed

The first indicator position contains a value that specifies the field containing the number being analyzed by the 765 field. This indicator facilitates different indexing of field 765 for public users trying to locate books on topics of interest and for classifiers and maintainers of the database.

#### 0 - 153 field

Value 0 indicates that the number analyzed is located in field 153 (Classification Number) of the record.

**1 - Other field**

Value 1 indicates that the number analyzed is located in a field other than field 153 of the record. Often the number is in field 684 (Auxiliary Instruction Note) or field 761 (Add or Divide Like Instruction).

**Second Indicator - Undefined**

The second indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (b).

**■ SUBFIELD CODES****⊕ a - Number where instructions are found—single number or beginning number of span**

Subfield ⊕ a identifies the classification number (single number or beginning number of span) under which add instructions are found to build a number.

**⊕ b - Base number**

Subfield ⊕ b contains the base classification number to which one or more other numbers are added. In many instances it may be the same as ⊕ a. When two or more additions are used to build one number, the base number for the second and following 765 fields is the number resulting from the immediately preceding addition.

**⊕ c - Number where instructions are found—ending number of span**

Subfield ⊕ c identifies the ending number of a classification number span under which an internal subarrangement or add instructions are found.

**⊕ f - Facet designator**

Subfield ⊕ f contains extra character(s) to be added to classification numbers that indicate facets.

**⊕ r - Root number**

Subfield ⊕ r contains the initial digits of the pattern number or span when these digits are not added. If this subfield is present, subfield ⊕ s or ⊕ t must also be present to specify the digits that are added.

**⊕ s - Digits added from classification number in schedule or external table**

Subfield ⊕ s contains the digits that have been added from a classification number in a schedule or external table to make up the synthesized number.

**⊕ t - Digits added from internal subarrangement or add table**

Subfield ⊕ t contains the digits that have been added from an internal subarrangement or add table to make up the synthesized number.

**⊕ u - Number being analyzed**

Subfield ⊕ u identifies the number being analyzed. Subfield ⊕ u is repeated when the same 765 field is applicable to more than one number appearing in the same record. If the number being analyzed is in field 153 (Classification Number), indicated by value 0 in the first indicator, this subfield need not be used unless both numbers in a classification number span are being analyzed.

**⊕ v - Number in internal subarrangement or add table where instructions are found**

Subfield ⊕ v identifies the number (single number or beginning number of span) in an internal subarrangement or add table under which add instructions are found.

**≠ w - Table identification-Internal subarrangement or add table**

Subfield ≠w identifies the classification number (single number or beginning number of span) under which an internal subarrangement or add table is found.

**≠ z - Table identification**

Subfield ≠z identifies the table used in building a number. For a classification number span, subfield ≠z is given only once, before the first number.

**≠ 6 - Linkage**

**≠ 8 - Field link and sequence number**

See description of these subfields in Appendix A.

**■ EXAMPLES**

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a362.1969942 ≠ hSocial sciences ≠ hSocial problems and services; associations ≠ kSocial problems and services ≠ kSpecific social problems and services ≠ hSocial welfare problems and services ≠ kProblems of and services to persons with illnesses and disabilities ≠ hPhysical illness ≠ kMedical services ≠ hServices to patients with specific conditions ≠ kSpecific conditions ≠ hDiseases ≠ kSpecific diseases ≠ hOther diseases ≠ hTumors and miscellaneous communicable diseases ≠ hCancers ≠ hCancers of other organs and of regions ≠ jRespiratory organs

765 0b ≠ b362.19 ≠ a362.196 ≠ c362.198 ≠ r61 ≠ s6994

765 0b ≠ b362.196994 ≠ a616.9942 ≠ c616.9949 ≠ r611 ≠ s2

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a346.0469516 ≠ hSocial sciences ≠ hLaw ≠ kBranches of law; laws (statutes), regulations, cases; law of specific jurisdictions, areas, socioeconomic regions ≠ kBranches of law ≠ hPrivate law ≠ kSpecific subjects in private law ≠ hProperty ≠ hGovernment control and regulation of specific kinds of land and natural resources ≠ hOther natural resources ≠ hBiological resources ≠ hGeneral topics ≠ kManagement and control ≠ jConservation and protection

765 0b ≠ b346.046 ≠ a346.046 ≠ r333 ≠ s95

765 0b ≠ b346.04695 ≠ a333.7 ≠ w333.7 ≠ t16

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a616.994059 ≠ hTechnology (Applied sciences) ≠ hMedical sciences. Medicine ≠ hDiseases ≠ kSpecific diseases ≠ hOther diseases ≠ hTumors and miscellaneous communicable diseases ≠ hCancers ≠ kPreventive measures, surgery, therapy, pathology, psychosomatic medicine, case histories ≠ hPreventive measures and surgery ≠ jSurgery

765 0b ≠ b616.994 ≠ a618.1 ≠ c618.8 ≠ w618.1 ≠ c618.8 ≠ t059

084 0b ≠ addc ≠ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ≠ a372.1100992 ≠ hSocial sciences ≠ hEducation ≠ kSpecific levels of education ≠ hElementary education ≠ hOrganization and activities in elementary education ≠ hSchool organization and activities in elementary education ≠ hTeachers and teaching, and related activities ≠ hStandard subdivisions ≠ hHistorical, geographic, persons treatment ≠ jPersons

765 0b ≠ b372.1 ≠ a372.11 ≠ c372.18 ≠ r371 ≠ s1

765 0b ≠ b372.11 ≠ a371.1008 ≠ c371.1009 ≠ f0 ≠ z1 ≠ s092



- 084 0b † addc † c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb † a785.2 † c785.9 † hThe arts. Fine and decorative arts † hMusic † kPrinciples, forms, ensembles, voices, instruments † kEnsembles, voices, instruments † kInstruments and their music † hEnsembles with only one instrument per part † jSpecific kinds of ensembles  
 763 08 † 81.6 † iClass instrumental techniques for mixed ensembles in † s784.193; † p253  
 763 08 † 81.7 † iclass instrumental techniques for specific instruments in † s786 † c788, † i e.g., bowing techniques for violins † e787.219369 † p253  
 765 1b † b787.2 † a784 † c788 † w784 † c788 † t1 † u787.219369  
 765 1b † b787.21 † a784 † c788 † v18 † c19 † r784.1 † s9369 † u787.219369
- 084 0b † addc † c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb † a333.953901 † c333.95391 † hSocial sciences † hEconomics † k Economics of labor, finance, land, energy † hEconomics of land and energy † hOther natural resources † hBiological resources † hPlants † hPlants as sources of energy † jStandard subdivisions and general topics of plants as sources of energy  
 761 10 † iAdd to base number † b333.9359 † inotation † d01 † c1 † ifrom table under † a 333.7, † iexcept use † d15 † ifor both development and generation of energy, e.g., generation of energy from biomass † e333.953915  
 765 1b † b333.9539 † a333.953901 † c333.95391 † w333.7 † t15 † u333.953915
- 084 0b † addc † c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb † a255.91 † c255.97 † hReligion † kChristianity † kSpecific elements of Christianity † kChristian church † hLocal Christian church and Christian religious orders † hReligious congregations and orders † hCongregations and orders of women † jRoman Catholic orders of women  
 761 10 † iAdd to base number † b255.9 † ithe numbers following † r271.9 † iin † d271.91 † c271.97 † ifor the order only, e.g., Dominican sisters † e255.972; † ithen, for each order having its own number, add further as instructed under † a255.1 † c255.7 † i(not as instructed at † x271), † ie.g., Dominicans in the United Kingdom † e255.97200941, † ithe rule of the Dominicans † e255.97206  
 765 0b † b255.9 † a255.91 † c255.97 † r271.9 † s1 † u255.91  
 765 0b † b255.9 † a255.91 † c255.97 † r271.9 † s7 † u255.97  
 765 1b † b255.9 † a255.91 † c255.97 † r271.9 † s72 † u255.972 † u255.97200941 † u255.97206  
 765 1b † b255.972 † a255.1 † c255.7 † f0 † z1 † s09 † u255.97200941  
 765 1b † b255.972009 † z1 † a093 † c099 † z2 † s41 † u255.97200941  
 765 1b † b255.972 † a255.1 † c255.7 † w255.1 † c255.7 † t06 † u255.97206
- 084 0b † addc † c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]  
 153 bb † z1 † a093 † c099 † hStandard subdivisions † hHistorical, geographic, persons treatment † jTreatment by specific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds  
 684 1b † iPersons treatment ... For example, a book on the style and character of sculptures by Cellini, Donatello, and Michelangelo is classed in † a730.92245, † ibut a book illustrating Italian Renaissance sculpture by describing the work of these same men is classed in † a730.94509024.  
 765 0b † z1 † b09 † z1 † a093 † c099 † z2 † s3 † z1 † u093  
 765 0b † z1 † b09 † z1 † a093 † c099 † z2 † s9 † z1 † u099  
 765 1b † b73 † z1 † s0922 † u730.92245  
 765 1b † b730.922 † z1 † a0922 † z2 † s45 † u730.92245  
 765 1b † b73 † z1 † s09 † u730.94509024  
 765 1b † b730.9 † z1 † a093 † c099 † z2 † s45 † u730.94509024



765 1b + b730.945 + z1 + a093 + c099 + z1 + w093 + w099 + t09 + u730.94509024

765 1b + b730.94509 + z1 + a093 + c099 + v09 + r09 + z1 + s024 + u730.94509024

---

## SCHEME-SPECIFIC CONVENTIONS

**Dewey Decimal Classification** - The primary use for this field is for the *Dewey Decimal Classification*, which is based on the concept of number building. Field 765 is repeated each time an addition is made to the base number.

**Order of subfields** - The base number (subfield +b) is always given first, followed by the location of add instructions (subfields +a and +c). When there are multiple additions to a synthesized number, a cumulative base number (the number which resulted from the previous addition) is used in subfield +b of the following 765 field. This field includes instructions about how many zeros to add for standard subdivisions. In these cases, the zeros are recorded in subfield +f (Facet designator).

---



# 768 Citation and Preference Order Instructions (R)

## First Indicator

Type of instruction

0 Citation and preference order note

1 Table of preference

## Second Indicator

Undefined

␣ Undefined

## Subfield Codes

⊕a Classification number—Single number or beginning number of span (R)

⊕c Classification number—Ending number of span (R)

⊕e Example class number (R)

⊕i Explanatory text (R)

⊕j Caption (R)

⊕n Negative example class number (R)

⊕t Topic used as example of citation and preference order instruction (R)

⊕x Exception to table of preference (R)

⊕z Table identification—Table number (R)

⊕6 Linkage (NR)

⊕8 Field link and sequence number (NR)

## FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains a note or table with instructions about the order in which elements are to be applied in synthesizing a classification number or instructions about preference for the classification of different characteristics of a topic.

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

### ■ INDICATORS

#### First Indicator - Type of instruction

The first indicator position contains a value that specifies the type of instruction note.

##### 0 - Citation and preference order note

Value 0 indicates that the field is a note that contains instructions about the order in which elements are to be applied in synthesizing a classification number or instructions about preference for the classification of different characteristics of a topic.

##### 1 - Table of preference

Value 1 indicates that the field contains part of a table of preference for the classification of different characteristics of a topic.

#### Second Indicator - Undefined

The second indicator position is undefined and contains a blank (␣).

### ■ SUBFIELD CODES

#### ⊕a - Classification number—Single number or beginning number of span

Subfield ⊕a contains a single classification number or the beginning number of a span that is part of the citation and preference order note or table.

**‡c - Classification number-Ending number of span**

Subfield ‡c contains the ending of a classification number span that is part of the citation and preference order note or table.

**‡e - Example class number**

Subfield ‡e contains an example of the correct classification number for the topic used to illustrate the citation and preference order instruction.

**‡i - Explanatory text**

Subfield ‡i contains text of the citation and preference order note or table.

**‡j - Caption**

Subfield ‡j contains the caption for the immediately following classification number in a table of preference. This caption usually matches the caption in field 153 (Classification Number) for that classification number.

**‡n - Negative example class number**

Subfield ‡n contains an example of the incorrect classification number for the topic used to illustrate the citation and preference order instruction.

**‡t - Topic used as example of citation and preference order instruction**

Subfield ‡t contains the topic used to illustrate the citation and preference order instruction.

**‡x - Exception to table of preference**

Subfield ‡x contains the start of an exception note in a table of preference.

**‡z - Table identification-Table number**

Subfield ‡z contains the identification of the number of the table to which a classification number recorded in field 768 belongs. For a classification number span, subfield ‡z is given only once, before the first number.

**‡6 - Linkage****‡8 - Field link and sequence number**

See description of these subfields in Appendix A.

**■ EXAMPLES**

084 0b ‡addc ‡c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ‡a382.093 ‡c382.099 ‡hSocial sciences ‡hCommerce, communications, transportation ‡kInternal and international commerce (trade) ‡hInternational commerce (Foreign trade) ‡hHistorical, geographic, persons treatment ‡jInternational commerce in specific continents, countries, localities

683 2b ‡81.2 ‡i(Option: Give priority in notation to the continent, country, locality requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries in United States class trade between United Kingdom and United States in ‡a382.0973041)

768 0b ‡81.1 ‡iGive priority in notation to the continent, country, locality emphasized. If emphasis is equal, give priority to the one coming first in Table 2

**Display example:**

382.093 International commerce in specific continents, countries, localities

Give priority in notation to the continent, country, locality emphasized. If emphasis is equal, give priority to the one coming first in Table 2 International commerce in specific continents, countries, localities (Option: Give priority in

notation to the continent, country, locality requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries in United States class trade between United Kingdom and United States in  $\neq$  a382.0973041)

084 0b  $\neq$  addc  $\neq$  c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb  $\neq$  a808.1  $\neq$  c808.7  $\neq$  hLiterature (Belles-lettres) and rhetoric  $\neq$  hRhetoric and collections of literary texts from more than two literatures  $\neq$  kRhetoric  $\neq$  jRhetoric in specific literary forms

768 0b  $\neq$  iObserve table of preference under  $\neq$  a800

084 0b  $\neq$  addc  $\neq$  c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb  $\neq$  a641.563  $\neq$  hTechnology (Applied sciences)  $\neq$  hHome economics and family living  $\neq$  hFood and drink  $\neq$  kFood preservation, storage, cooking  $\neq$  hCooking  $\neq$  hCooking for special situations, reasons, ages  $\neq$  jCooking for health, appearance, personal reasons

768 0b  $\neq$  iUnless other instructions are given, class a subject with aspects in two or more subdivisions of  $\neq$  a641.563  $\neq$  iin the number coming first, e.g.,  $\neq$  tlow-carbohydrate, low-calorie cooking for persons with diabetes  $\neq$  e641.56314  $\neq$  i(not  $\neq$  n641.5635  $\neq$  ior  $\neq$  n 641.5638)

084 0b  $\neq$  addc  $\neq$  c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb  $\neq$  a331  $\neq$  hSocial sciences  $\neq$  hEconomics  $\neq$  kEconomics of labor, finance, land, energy  $\neq$  jLabor economics

768 1b  $\neq$  81.1  $\neq$  iUnless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g.,  $\neq$  tcompensation of women in banking  $\neq$  e331.42813321  $\neq$  i(not  $\neq$  n331.2813321  $\neq$  ior  $\neq$  n331.7613321)

768 1b  $\neq$  81.2  $\neq$  jChoice of vocation  $\neq$  a331.702

768 1b  $\neq$  81.3  $\neq$  jLabor force by personal characteristics  $\neq$  a331.3  $\neq$  c331.6

768 1b  $\neq$  81.4  $\neq$  jLabor force and market  $\neq$  a331.1

768 1b  $\neq$  81.5  $\neq$  jConditions of employment  $\neq$  a331.2

768 1b  $\neq$  81.6  $\neq$  jLabor unions (Trade unions), labor-management (collective) bargaining and disputes  $\neq$  a331.8

768 1b  $\neq$  81.7  $\neq$  jLabor by industry and occupation  $\neq$  a331.7  $\neq$  x(except  $\neq$  a331.702)  
[Since this is a table of preference (indicated by value 1 in the first indicator) separate 768 fields are used, ordered by subfield  $\neq$  8.]

*Display example:*

331 Labor economics

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., compensation of women in banking 331.42813321 (not 331.2813321 or 331.7613321)

Choice of vocation	331.702
Labor force by personal characteristics	331.3-331.6
Labor force and market	331.1
Compensation and other conditions of employment	331.2
Labor unions (Trade unions), labor-management (collective) bargaining and disputes	331.8
Labor by industry and occupation (except 331.702)	331.7




- 084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]
- 153 bb ‡ z1 ‡ a0 ‡ jStandard Subdivisions
- 768 1b ‡ 81.1 ‡ iUnless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., ‡ tlanguage and communication in education and research ‡ z1 ‡ e07 ‡ i (not ‡ z1 ‡ n014):
- 768 1b ‡ 81.2 ‡ jSpecial topics ‡ z1 ‡ a04
- 768 1b ‡ 81.3 ‡ jPersons ‡ z1 ‡ a092
- 768 1b ‡ 81.4 ‡ jAuxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials ‡ z1 ‡ a028 ‡ x(except ‡ z1 ‡ a0288)
- 768 1b ‡ 81.5 ‡ jDrafting illustrations ‡ z1 ‡ a0221
- 768 1b ‡ 81.6 ‡ jEducation, research, related topics ‡ z1 ‡ a07 ‡ x(except ‡ z1 ‡ a074, ‡ z1 ‡ a075, ‡ z1 ‡ a076, ‡ z1 ‡ a077)
- 768 1b ‡ 81.7 ‡ jManagement ‡ z1 ‡ a068
- 768 1b ‡ 81.8 ‡ jPhilosophy and theory ‡ z1 ‡ a01 ‡ x(except ‡ z1 ‡ a0112, ‡ z1 ‡ a014)
- 768 1b ‡ 81.9 ‡ jThe subject as a profession, occupation, hobby ‡ z1 ‡ a023
- 768 1b ‡ 81.10 ‡ jThe subject for persons in specific occupations ‡ z1 ‡ a024
- 768 1b ‡ 81.11 ‡ jDirectories of persons and organizations ‡ z1 ‡ a025
- 768 1b ‡ 81.12 ‡ jPatents and identification marks ‡ z1 ‡ a027
- 768 1b ‡ 81.13 ‡ jCommercial miscellany ‡ z1 ‡ a029
- 768 1b ‡ 81.14 ‡ jStandards ‡ z1 ‡ a0218
- 768 1b ‡ 81.15 ‡ jFormulas and specifications ‡ z1 ‡ a0212
- 768 1b ‡ 81.16 ‡ jOrganizations ‡ z1 ‡ a0601 ‡ c0609
- 768 1b ‡ 81.17 ‡ jOrganizations (without subdivision) ‡ z1 ‡ a06
- 768 1b ‡ 81.15 ‡ jHistory and description with respect to kinds of persons ‡ z1 ‡ a08
- 768 1b ‡ 81.16 ‡ jTreatment by specific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds ‡ z1 ‡ a093 ‡ c099....

*Display example:*

**Table 1. Standard Subdivisions**

Unless other instructions are given, observe the following table of preference, e.g., language and communication in education and research 1 07 (not 1 014):

Special topics	--04
Persons	--092
Auxiliary techniques and procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials (except --0288)	--028
Drafting illustrations	--0221
Education, research, related topics (except --074, --075, --076, --077)	--07
Management	--068
Philosophy and theory (except --0112, --014)	--01
The subject as a profession, occupation, hobby	--023
The subject for persons in specific occupations	--024
Directories of persons and organizations	--025
Patents and identification marks	--027
Commercial miscellany	--029
Standards	--0218
Formulas and specifications	--0212
Organizations	--0601-609
Organizations (without subdivision)	--06



History and description with respect to kinds of persons	--08
Treatment by specific continents, countries, localities; extraterrestrial worlds	--093-099

---

## SCHEME-SPECIFIC CONVENTIONS

**Dewey Decimal Classification** - A see reference that serves also as a preference order note is recorded in field 253 (Complex See Reference) or field 553 (Valid Number Tracing). An add or divide like note that serves also as a citation order note is recorded in field 761 (Add or Divide Like Instructions). An optional citation and preference order instruction is contained in field 683 (Application Instruction Note).

The order of display of the fields in the record is not necessarily related to the order of the tags. For instance, if an option note is given in field 683 and field 768 contains the citation and preference order instructions for the standard schedule, the standard instructions must be given first. Subfield  $\neq 8$  is used to link and sequence 6XX and 76X fields.

If the instruction is that of a table of preference each entry is recorded in a separate 768 field. If subfield  $\neq 8$  is used, the sequence number is assigned according to the order of the elements in the table.

---









## **8XX Location and Alternate Graphics--General Information**

**856 Electronic Location and Access (R)**

**880 Alternate Graphic Representation (R)**

---

### **DEFINITION AND SCOPE**

Field 856 and 880 are the only 8XX defined in the MARC 21 classification format at the present time. For the most part, these fields carry over the definitions found in the other MARC 21 formats.

---



## 856 Electronic Location and Access (R)

### First Indicator

#### Access method

- Ø No information provided
- 0 Email
- 1 FTP
- 2 Remote login (Telnet)
- 3 Dial-up
- 4 HTTP
- 7 Method specified in subfield ≠2

### Second Indicator

#### Relationship

- Ø No information provided
- 0 Resource
- 1 Version of resource
- 2 Related resource
- 8 No display constant generated

### Subfield Codes

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| ≠a Host name (R)                     | ≠q Electronic format type (NR)         |
| ≠b Access number (R)                 | ≠r Settings (NR)                       |
| ≠c Compression information (R)       | ≠s File size (R)                       |
| ≠d Path (R)                          | ≠t Terminal emulation (R)              |
| ≠f Electronic name (R)               | ≠u Uniform Resource Identifier (R)     |
| ≠h Processor of request (NR)         | ≠v Hours access method available (R)   |
| ≠i Instruction (R)                   | ≠w Record control number (R)           |
| ≠j Bits per second (NR)              | ≠x Nonpublic note (R)                  |
| ≠k Password (NR)                     | ≠y Link text (R)                       |
| ≠l Logon (NR)                        | ≠z Public note (R)                     |
| ≠m Contact for access assistance (R) | ≠2 Access method (NR)                  |
| ≠n Name of location of host (NR)     | ≠3 Materials specified (NR)            |
| ≠o Operating system (NR)             | ≠6 Linkage (NR)                        |
| ≠p Port (NR)                         | ≠8 Field link and sequence number (NR) |

### FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains the information needed to locate and access electronic information. The field may be used in a classification record for a resource when that resource or a subset of it is available electronically. In addition, it may be used to locate and access an electronic version of a non-electronic resource described in the classification record or a related electronic resource. This field may also be used to link to an electronic resource intended to supplement the classification scheme, e.g. an image of a map.

Field 856 is repeated when the location data elements vary (the URL in subfield ≠u or subfields ≠a, ≠b, ≠d when used). It is also repeated when more than one access method is used, mirror sites are recorded, different formats/resolutions with different URLs are indicated, and related items are recorded.

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

## ■ INDICATORS

**First Indicator - Access method**

The first indicator position contains a value that defines the access method to the electronic resource. If the resource is available by more than one access method, the field is repeated with data appropriate to each method. The methods defined are the main TCP/IP (Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol) protocols.

When recording a URL in subfield  $\neq u$  the value corresponds to the access method (URL scheme), which is also the first element in the URL string.

**b - No information provided**

Value **b** indicates that no information about access method is provided. This value is used when subfield  $\neq g$  contains a URN and there is no URL recorded in subfield  $\neq u$ . When subfield  $\neq u$  contains a URL and subfield  $\neq g$  is also present with a URN, the indicator value for the appropriate access method of the URL is given.

**0 - Email**

Value **0** indicates that access to the electronic resource is through electronic mail (email). This access includes subscribing to an electronic journal or electronic forum through software intended to be used by an email system.

**1 - FTP**

Value **1** indicates that the access to the electronic resource is through the File Transfer Protocol (FTP).

**2 - Remote login (Telnet)**

Value **2** indicates that access to the electronic resource is through remote login (Telnet).

**3 - Dial-up**

Value **3** indicates that access to the electronic resource is through a conventional telephone line (dial-up). Additional information in subfields of the record may enable the user to connect to the resource.

**4 - HTTP**

Value **4** indicates that access to the electronic resource is through the Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP).

**7 - Method specified in subfield  $\neq 2$** 

Value **7** indicates that access to the electronic resource is through a method other than the defined values and for which an identifying code is given in subfield  $\neq 2$  (Source of access).

**Second Indicator - Relationship**

The second indicator position contains a value that identifies the relationship between the electronic resource at the location identified in field 856 and the entity described in the record. Only value **b** (no information provided) is used for classification records.

**b - No information provided**

Value **b** indicates that no information is provided about the relationship of the electronic resource described in the record.

- 0 - Resource
- 1 - Version of resource
- 2 - Related resource
- 8 - No display constant generated

Do not apply these indicator values to classification records.

## ■ SUBFIELD CODES

### ≠ a - Host name

Subfield ≠ a contains the fully qualified domain (host name) of the electronic location. It contains a network address which is repeated if there is more than one address for the same host.

### ≠ b - Access number

Subfield ≠ b contains the access number associated with a host. It can contain the Internet Protocol (IP) numeric address if the item is an Internet resource, or a telephone number if dial-up access is provided through a telephone line. This data may change frequently and may be generated by the system, rather than statically stored. Subfield ≠ b may be repeated if all the other information in the field applies.

### ≠ c - Compression information

Subfield ≠ c contains information about the compression of a file. If a specific program is required to decompress the file, it is noted here. The subfield may be repeated if two compression programs are used, noting the latest compression first.

### ≠ d - Path

Subfield ≠ d contains the *path*, the series of logical directory and subdirectory names that indicate where a file is stored. The filename itself is recorded in subfield ≠ f. This may be a surrogate path leading the user to the host where complete and current access information is stored in a locator table.

### ≠ f - Electronic name

Subfield ≠ f contains the electronic name of a file as it exists in the directory/subdirectory indicated in subfield ≠ d on the host identified in subfield ≠ a. Subfield ≠ f may be repeated if a single logical file has been divided into parts and stored under different names. In this case, the separate parts should constitute a single bibliographic item. In all other cases, a file that may be retrieved under different filenames contains multiple occurrences of field 856, each with its corresponding electronic name in subfield ≠ f. A filename may include wildcard characters (e.g., \* or ?) if applicable. Use subfield ≠ z to explain how files are named, if needed.

### ≠ h - Processor of request

Subfield ≠ h contains the username, or processor of the request; generally the data which precedes the *at sign* (@) in the host address.

### ≠ i - Instruction

Subfield ≠ i contains an instruction or command needed for the remote host to process a request.

### ≠ j - Bits per second

Subfield ≠ j contains the lowest and highest number of *bits* (binary units) of data that can be transmitted per second when connected to a host. The syntax for recording the number of bits per second (BPS) should be: <Lowest BPS>-<Highest BPS>. If only lowest given: <Lowest BPS>- ; If only highest given: -<Highest BPS>.



**≠ k - Password**

Subfield ≠ k contains the password required to access the electronic resource. An FTP site may require the user to enter an Internet Protocol address or may require a specific password. Electronically accessed catalogs may also require a password. If a system that requires a password will accept anything entered as valid, this subfield can be omitted from field 856. This subfield is used to record general-use passwords, and should not contain passwords requiring security. Textual instructions about passwords are contained in subfield ≠ z (Public note).

**≠ l - Logon**

Subfield ≠ l contains characters needed to connect (i.e., *logon*, *login*, etc.) to an electronic resource or FTP site. (For many general-use File Transfer Protocol servers, access is gained by entering the string "anonymous.") An account number required for login may also be indicated. This subfield is used to record general-use logon strings which do not require special security.

**≠ m - Contact for access assistance**

Subfield ≠ m contains the name of a contact for assistance in accessing a resource at the host specified in subfield ≠ a.

**≠ n - Name of location of host**

Subfield ≠ n contains the conventional name of the location of the host in subfield ≠ a, including its physical (geographic) location.

**≠ o - Operating system**

For informational purposes, the operating system used by the host specified in subfield ≠ a may be indicated here. Conventions for the path and filenames may be dependent on the operating system of the host.

**≠ p - Port**

Subfield ≠ p contains the portion of the address that identifies a process or service in the host.

**≠ q - Electronic format type**

Subfield ≠ q contains an identification of the electronic format type, which is the data representation of the resource, such as text/html, ASCII, Postscript file, executable application, or JPEG image. The intent of specifying this element is to provide information necessary to allow people or machines to make decisions about the usability of the encoded data (what hardware and software might be required to display or execute it, for example). The electronic format type also determines the file transfer mode, or how data are transferred through a network. (Usually, a text file can be transferred as character data which generally restricts the text to characters in the ASCII (*American National Standard Code for Information Interchange* (ANSI X3.4)) character set (i.e., the basic Latin alphabet, digits 0-9, a few special characters, and most punctuation marks) and text files with characters outside of the ASCII set, or non-textual data (e.g., computer programs, image data) must be transferred using another binary mode.) Electronic format type may be taken from enumerated lists such as registered Internet Media Types (MIME types).

**≠ r - Settings**

Subfield ≠ r contains the settings used for transferring data. Included in settings are: 1) Number Data Bits (the number of bits per character); 2) Number Stop Bits (the number of bits to signal the end of a byte); and 3) Parity (the parity checking technique used). The syntax of these elements is:

<Parity>-<Number Data Bits>-<Number Stop Bits>

If only the parity is given, the other elements of settings and their related hyphens are omitted (i.e., <Parity>). If one of the other two elements is given, the hyphen for the missing element is recorded in its proper position (i.e., <Parity>--<Number Stop Bits> or <Parity>-<Number Data Bits>- )

The values for parity are: O (Odd), E (Even), N (None), S (Space), and M (Mark).

#### ≠s - File size

Subfield ≠s contains the size of the file as stored under the filename indicated in subfield ≠f. It is generally expressed in terms of 8-bit bytes (octets). It may be repeated in cases where the filename is repeated and directly follows the subfield ≠f to which it applies. This information is not given for journals, since field 856 relates to the entire title, not to particular issues.

#### ≠t - Terminal emulation

Subfield ≠t contains an indication of a terminal emulation supported. Terminal emulation is usually specified for remote login (first indicator contains value 2 (Remote login (Telnet))).

#### ≠u - Uniform Resource Identifier

Subfield ≠u contains the Uniform Resource Identifier (URI), which provides electronic access data in a standard syntax. This data can be used for automated access to an electronic item using one of the Internet protocols or by resolution of a URN. Field 856 is structured to allow for the creation of a URL from the concatenation of other separate field 856 subfields. Subfield ≠u may be used instead of those separate subfields or in addition to them.

#### ≠v - Hours access method available

Subfield ≠v contains the hours that access to an electronic resource is available at the location indicated in this field. If the record is for a system or service, the hours of availability are recorded in field 307 (Hours, etc.). This subfield is only used to record hours of availability of the specific location indicated in field 856.

#### ≠w - Record control number

Subfield ≠w contains the system control number of the related record preceded by the MARC code, enclosed in parentheses, for the agency to which the control number applies. The data in the subfield links field 856 to the MARC record having the same data in a control number field. The sources for the MARC code are the *MARC Code List for Organizations* (maintained by the Library of Congress) and *Symbols and Interlibrary Loan Policies in Canada* (maintained by the National Library of Canada).

#### ≠x - Nonpublic note

Subfield ≠x contains a note relating to the electronic location of the source identified in the field. The note is written in a form that is not adequate or intended for public display. It may also contain processing information about the file at the location specified.

#### ≠y - Link text

This subfield contains link text which is used for display in place of the URL in subfield ≠u. When subfield ≠y is present, applications should use the contents of subfield ≠y as the link instead of the content of subfield ≠u when linking to the destination in subfield ≠u. The use of the link text is independent of any decision concerning the second indicator value.

#### ≠z - Public note

Subfield ≠z contains a note relating to the electronic location of the source identified in the field. The note is written in a form that is adequate or intended for public display.

### ‡2 - Access method

Subfield ‡2 contains the access method when the first indicator position contains value 7 (Method specified in subfield ‡2). This subfield may include access methods other than the four main TCP/IP protocols specified in the first indicator. The data in this subfield corresponds with the access schemes specified in *Uniform Resource Locators (URL)* (RFC 1738), a product of the Uniform Resource Identifiers Working Group of the IETF. The Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) maintains a registry of URL schemes and defines the syntax and use of new schemes; the Library of Congress will include an authoritative list based on that standard in the *MARC Code Lists for Relators, Sources, Description Conventions*.

### ‡3 - Materials specified

Subfield ‡3 contains information that specifies the part of the entity to which the field applies.

### ‡6 - Linkage

### ‡8 - Field link and sequence number

See description of these subfields in Appendix A.

## ■ EXAMPLE

```
084 0‡ alcc      [Library of Congress Classification]
153 ‡aG1350‡cG1352‡hAtlases‡hBy region or country‡hAmerica. Western
    Hemisphere‡hNorth America‡hUnited States‡hNortheastern States. Eastern United
    States, 1870 and later‡hSouthern States. Confederate States of America‡hSouth
    Central States‡jWest South Central States
856 7‡ uhttp://minaret.loc.gov/images/gschedule/G1350a.gif‡yMap of West south central
    states
    [The 856 field links to an image file related to the G schedule (Geography; Maps;
    Anthropology; Recreation), which consists of a map with references to classification
    numbers that cover particular areas.]
```

## INPUT CONVENTIONS

**Spacing underscore and tilde in URLs** - Replace the spacing underscore ( ) and the spacing tilde (~) found in system, directory, or file names with their corresponding hex code, preceded by the percent sign (%):

%5F for spacing underscore

%7E for spacing tilde

**Style for Recording Telephone Numbers** - In subfield ‡b, periods, spaces, and parentheses used to divide the portions of a number are replaced with hyphens. Numbers are recorded as follows:

<country code>-<area/city code>-<exchange/line number>

The exchange/line number portion often includes internal separators which are replaced by hyphens. If an extension is also given, it is appended to the telephone number preceded by a space and "x".

```
856 3‡ b1-202-7072316‡j2400/9600‡nLibrary of Congress, Washington,
    DC‡oUNIX‡rE-7-1‡tvt100‡zRequires logon and password
```

## CONTENT DESIGNATOR HISTORY

‡g Uniform Resource Name

‡y Link text

Subfield ‡g was made obsolete in 2000 in favor of recording the URN in subfield ‡u and subfield ‡y was defined to use for display in place of the URL in subfield ‡u.



## 880 Alternate Graphic Representation (R)

### First Indicator

Same as associated field

### Second Indicator

Same as associated field

### Subfield Codes

⌘6 Linkage (NR)

⌘a-z Same as associated field

⌘0-5, 7-9 Same as associated field

## FIELD DEFINITION AND SCOPE

This field contains the fully content-designated representation, in a different script, of another field in the same record. Field 880 is linked to the associated regular field by subfield ⌘6 (Linkage). A subfield ⌘6 in the associated field also links that field to the 880 field. When an associated field does not exist in the record, field 880 is constructed as if it did and a reserved occurrence number (00) is used to indicate the special situation. The data in field 880 may be in more than one script.

Descriptions of models for and examples of multiscript records are contained in Appendix C; description of subfield ⌘6 is in Appendix A; specifications for character sets and repertoires for scripts are found in *MARC 21 Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, and Exchange Media*.

## GUIDELINES FOR APPLYING CONTENT DESIGNATORS

### ■ INDICATORS

The indicators in field 880 have the same meaning and values as the indicators in the associated field and are not described in this section. See the description of the specific associated field.

### ■ SUBFIELD CODES

#### ⌘a-z, ⌘0-5, 7-9 - Same as associated field

These subfields are the same as those defined in the associated field. For a description of the subfields, see the sections describing the associated fields.

Escape sequences are not included in the examples below.

680 0b ⌘6880-02 ⌘iClass here editions first edited in the 20th century.

880 bb ⌘6680-02/N ⌘iКлассируются здесь издания изданы впервые в 20ом веке.

#### ⌘6 - Linkage

See description of this subfield in Appendix A.

### ■ EXAMPLES

See full record examples in Appendix C.









## Control Subfields

### Subfields

- ‡0 Record control number
- ‡5 Institution to which field applies
- ‡6 Linkage
- ‡8 Field link and sequence number

Appendix A contains descriptions of four subfields that are used to link field data to specific institutions or to other fields. These subfields are defined for several (‡5 (Institution to which field applies)) or most (‡6 (Linkage), ‡8 (Field link and sequence number)) fields in the format, thus their descriptions are brought together in this appendix. The subfields are included in field level subfield lists wherever they are defined, with pointers to this appendix.

### ‡0 - RECORD CONTROL NUMBER

Subfield ‡0 contains the system control number of the related classification record preceded by the MARC code, enclosed in parentheses, for the system to which the control number applies. The sources of the MARC code are *MARC Code List for Organizations* (maintained by the Library of Congress) and *Symbols and Interlibrary Loan Policies in Canada* (maintained by the National Library of Canada).

- 084 0b ‡ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]  
 153 bb ‡ aBS580.M6 ‡ hThe Bible ‡ hGeneral ‡ hWorks about the Bible ‡ hMen, women and children of the Bible ‡ hBiography ‡ hIndividual Old Testament characters, A-Z ‡ jMoses  
 700 00 ‡ aMoses ‡ c(Biblical leader) ‡ 0(DLC)nbb79058331
- 084 0b ‡ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]  
 153 bb ‡ aHG3881.5.158 ‡ hFinance ‡ hForeign exchange. International finance ‡ hInternational finance. International monetary system. International banking ‡ hIndividual international financial institutions, A-Z ‡ jInternational Monetary Fund  
 710 20 ‡ aInternational Monetary Fund ‡ 0(DLC)nbb81052755
- 084 0b ‡ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]  
 153 bb ‡ aPR1588 ‡ hEnglish literature ‡ hAnglo-Saxon literature ‡ hIndividual authors and works ‡ hBeowulf ‡ hCriticism ‡ jLanguage, grammar, etc.  
 730 00 ‡ aBeowulf ‡ xLanguage ‡ 0(DLC)shb85013267

### ‡5 - INSTITUTION TO WHICH FIELD APPLIES

Subfield ‡5 contains the MARC code of the institution or organization to which a note applies followed by any specific information about classification at the particular institution. It is used for institution-specific information that may or may not apply to the universal use of the classification record.

## Appendix A

The sources for the MARC code are the *MARC Code List for Organizations* (maintained by the Library of Congress) and *Symbols and Interlibrary Loan Policies in Canada* (maintained by the National Library of Canada).

084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21 [Dewey Decimal Classification]

153 bb ‡ a005.262 ‡ hGeneralities ‡ hComputer programming, programs, data ‡ kComputer programming and programs ‡ hProgramming for specific types of computers, for specific operating systems, for specific user interfaces ‡ hProgramming for digital microcomputers ‡ jProgramming in specific programming languages

683 1b ‡ iArrange alphabetically by name of programming language, e.g., C + +

683 1b ‡ aUse first three letters of programming language to subarrange ‡ 5 <location identifier >

[The library has its own method for arranging alphabetically, since the instructions are not specific.]

---

### ‡ 6 - LINKAGE

Subfield ‡ 6 contains data that links fields that are different script representations of each other. Subfield ‡ 6 may contain the tag number of an associated field, an occurrence number, a code that identifies the first script encountered in a left-to-right scan of the field, and an indication that the orientation for a display of the field data is right-to-left. A regular (non-880) field may be linked to one or more 880 fields that all contain different script representations of the same data. Subfield ‡ 6 is structured as follows:

‡ 6 <linking tag> - <occurrence number> / <script identification code> / <field orientation code>

Subfield ‡ 6 is always the first subfield in the field.

Descriptions of multiscript records, with examples, are in Appendix C; specifications for field 880 are under that field; specifications for character sets and repertoires for scripts are found in *MARC 21 Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, and Exchange Media*.

**Linking tag and occurrence number** - The *linking tag* part contains the tag number of the associated field. This part is followed immediately by a hyphen and the two-digit *occurrence number* part. A different occurrence number is assigned to each set of associated fields within a single record. The function of an *occurrence number* is to permit the matching of the associated fields (not to sequence the fields within the record). An *occurrence number* may be assigned at random for each set of associated fields. An *occurrence number* of less than two digits is right justified and the unused position contains a zero.

When there is no associated field to which a field 880 is linked, the *occurrence number* in subfield ‡ 6 is 00. It is used if an agency wants to separate scripts in a record. The *linking tag* part of subfield ‡ 6 will contain the tag that the associated regular field would have had if it had existed in the record.

680 0b ‡ 6880-02 ‡ iClass here editions first edited in the 20th century.

880 bb ‡ 6680-02/N ‡ iКлассируются здесь издания изданы впервые в 20ом веке.

**Script identification code** - The occurrence number is followed immediately by a slash (/) and the *script identification code*. This code identifies the alternate script found in the field. The following codes are used:

<i>Code</i>	<i>Script</i>
(3	Arabic
(B	Latin
\$1	Chinese, Japanese, Korean
(N	Cyrillic
(2	Hebrew

880 1b ⚭ 6153-01/(2/r ⚭ j <Caption in Hebrew script>

The entire field need not be in the script identified in subfield ⚭ 6. If more than one script is present in the field, subfield ⚭ 6 will contain the identification of the *first* alternate script encountered in a left-to-right scan of the field.

Note also that the *script identification code* is used in field 880, subfield ⚭ 6, but this data element is not generally used for subfield ⚭ 6 of the associated regular field. In the associated field, the data is assumed to be the primary script(s) for the record.

**Orientation code** - In a MARC record, the contents of field 880 are always recorded in their logical order, from the first character to the last, regardless of field orientation. For a display of the field, the default field orientation is left-to-right. When the field contains text that has a right-to-left orientation, the *script identification code* is followed by a slash (/) and the field *orientation code*. The MARC field *orientation code* for right-to-left scripts is the letter r. The *orientation code* is only included in fields with right-to-left orientation, since left-to-right orientation is the default orientation in 880 fields. (See *MARC 21 Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, and Exchange Media* for a detailed description of field orientation.)

880 bb ⚭ 6680-00/(2/r ⚭ a <Scope note in Hebrew script>  
*[The r indicates the right-to-left orientation of the Hebrew script.]*

Note that the *orientation code* is used in field 880, subfield ⚭ 6, but this data element is not generally used for subfield ⚭ 6 of the associated regular field. In the associated field, the data is assumed to be the usual orientation of the primary script(s) for the record.

## ⚭ 8 - FIELD LINK AND SEQUENCE NUMBER

Subfield ⚭ 8 contains data that identifies linked fields and may propose a sequence for the linked fields. Subfield ⚭ 8 may be repeated to link a field to more than one other group of fields. The structure and syntax for the field link and sequence number subfield is:

<linking number>.<sequence number> \ <field link type>

The **linking number** is the first data element in the subfield and required if the subfield is used. It is a variable-length whole number that occurs in subfield ⚭ 8 in all fields that are to be linked. Fields with the same linking number are considered linked.

The **sequence number** is separated from the linking number by a period "." and is optional. It is a variable-length whole number that may be used to indicate the relative order for display of the linked fields (lower sequence numbers displaying before higher ones). If it is used it must occur in all ⚭ 8 subfields containing the same linking number.

The **field link type** is separated from preceding data by a reverse slash "\". It is a code indicating the reason for the link and it follows the link number, or sequence number if present. In the absence



## Appendix A

of a field link type, it is assumed that subfield  $\#8$  is used for linking and sequencing related 6XX (Notes) or 76X (number building instructions and subarrangements) fields. The use of subfield  $\#8$  to maintain the order of these fields is essential to the understanding and application of the subarrangement or table. No explicit field link types have been defined in the *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data*.

084 0 $\#$ alcc [Library of Congress Classification]

153  $\#$ aHE394.A  $\#$ cHE394.Z  $\#$ hTransportation and communications  $\#$ hWater transportation  $\#$ hWaterways  $\#$ hBy region or country  $\#$ hUnited States  $\#$ jRiver improvement. By name of river, A-Z

763 08  $\#$ iUnder each:

763 10  $\#$ 81.1  $\#$ a.x  $\#$ jPeriodicals. Serials  $\#$ p153

763 10  $\#$ 81.2  $\#$ a.x3  $\#$ jGeneral works  $\#$ p153

763 10  $\#$ 81.3  $\#$ a.x4  $\#$ jGeneral special  $\#$ p153

Subfield  $\#8$  is always the first subfield in the field.

---





## Full Level Record Examples

This appendix contains full record examples based on sections of the *Library of Congress Classification*, the *Dewey Decimal Classification*, the *National Library of Medicine Classification*, and the *Universal Decimal Classification*. These examples reflect the application of MARC content designators in classification records. For each example record, the lines from the classification scheme being illustrated in the record appear first, introduced by the word *Scheme:* and information from the *DDC Manual* (if it appears), introduced by the word *Manual;* the record follows, introduced by the word *Record.* In addition, in the case of references generated from tracings, an abbreviated form of the record containing the tracing is given, which includes only the 008, 153 and 453/553 fields. The lines from the scheme are reproduced from the printed version; they are intended to aid in the understanding of the full record example, not as a suggested online display. In some cases, it has been necessary to edit the scheme slightly to encode the data. Fields are shown in numerical tag order; it may be desirable to change their order upon display.

Field 001 contains the phrase <control number> which indicates that the record is an example only. The records lack a system-generated directory, and the system-generated portions of the Leader (LDR) are represented by asterisks (\*). Control number fields have not been recorded (field 010 and 035).

The example records are divided into five sets:

- LCC schedule, class HE*
- LCC tables, class P-PZ*
- DDC schedule, class 003*
- DDC table, Table 6*
- NLM Classification, Index term record*
- UDC schedule, class 79*

---

### LCC SCHEDULE, CLASS HE (WATER TRANSPORTATION)

This example illustrates all records for *Library of Congress Classification* numbers between HE 380.8 and HE 398. Abbreviated records have been encoded for classification numbers from other portions of the *LCC* schedules when appropriate to show records with tracings that would generate cross references in this portion of the HE subclass.

*Scheme:*

WATER TRANSPORTATION

*Record:*

```
LDR *****nwb22*****nb4500
001 <control number>
008 901001acaaaaaa
084 0b#alcc
153 bb#aHE380.8#cHE971#hTransportation and communications#jWater transportation
```

*Scheme:*

Waterways

Class here the transportation economics of waterways. For engineering and construction, see TC1-1800

## Appendix B

### Record:

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
001 <control number>  
008 901001acaaaaaa  
084 0b Ꞥ alcc  
153 bb Ꞥ aHE380.8 Ꞥ cHE560 Ꞥ hTransportation and communications Ꞥ hWater transportation  
Ꞥ jWaterways  
680 0b Ꞥ iClass here the transportation economic aspects of waterways

### Record:

008 901001acaaaaaa  
153 bb Ꞥ aTC1 Ꞥ cTC1800 Ꞥ jHydraulic engineering  
553 0b Ꞥ wj Ꞥ aHE380.8 Ꞥ cHE560 Ꞥ hTransportation and communications Ꞥ hWater transportation  
Ꞥ jWaterways Ꞥ tengineering and construction

### Record:

008 901001acaaaaaa  
153 bb Ꞥ aHF1 Ꞥ cHF6182 Ꞥ jCommerce  
553 0b Ꞥ wj Ꞥ aHE380.8 Ꞥ cHE560 Ꞥ hTransportation and communications Ꞥ hWater transportation  
Ꞥ jWaterways Ꞥ tcommerce

### Record

008 901001aaaaaaaa  
153 bb Ꞥ aGB651 Ꞥ hPhysical geography Ꞥ hHydrology. Water Ꞥ jPeriodicals. Societies. Serials  
553 0b Ꞥ wj Ꞥ aHE380.8 Ꞥ cHE560 Ꞥ hTransportation and communications Ꞥ hWater transportation  
Ꞥ jWaterways Ꞥ thydrography

### Scheme:

HE380.8 Periodicals. Societies. Serials

### Record:

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
001 <control number>  
008 901001aaaaaaaa  
084 0b Ꞥ alcc  
153 bb Ꞥ aHE380.8 Ꞥ hTransportation and communications Ꞥ hWater transportation  
Ꞥ hWaterways Ꞥ jPeriodicals. Societies. Serials

### Scheme:

HE381 General works

### Record:

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
001 <control number>  
008 901001aaaaaaaa  
084 0b Ꞥ alcc  
153 bb Ꞥ aHE381 Ꞥ hTransportation and communications Ꞥ hWater transportation Ꞥ hWaterways  
Ꞥ jGeneral works

### Scheme:

HE383 Waterways in relation to other forms of transportation  
For railroads and waterways, see HE1049



*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500

001 &lt;control number&gt;

008 901001aaaaaaa

084 0b ≠ alcc

153 bb ≠ aHE383 ≠ hTransportation and communications ≠ hWater transportation ≠ hWaterways  
≠ jWaterways in relation to other forms of transportation*Record:*

008 901001aaaaaaa

153 bb ≠ aHE1049 ≠ hTransportation and communications ≠ hRailroads ≠ hRelation to other  
subjects ≠ jRailways and other carriers553 0b ≠ wj ≠ aHE383 ≠ hTransportation and communications ≠ hWater transportation  
≠ hWaterways ≠ jWaterways in relation to other forms of transportation ≠ trailroads and  
waterways*Scheme:*

International waterways

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500

001 &lt;control number&gt;

008 901001acaaaaaa

084 0b ≠ alcc

153 bb ≠ aHE385 ≠ cHE387 ≠ hTransportation and communications ≠ hWater  
transportation ≠ hWaterways ≠ jInternational waterways*Scheme:*

HE385 General works

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500

001 &lt;control number&gt;

008 901001aaaaaaa

084 0b ≠ alcc

153 bb ≠ aHE385 ≠ hTransportation and communications ≠ hWater transportation  
≠ hWaterways ≠ hInternational waterways ≠ jGeneral works*Scheme:*

HE386 Sound duties

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500

001 &lt;control number&gt;

008 901001abaaaaaa

084 0b ≠ alcc

153 bb ≠ aHE386 ≠ hTransportation and communications ≠ hWater  
transportation ≠ hWaterways ≠ hInternational waterways ≠ jSound duties

753 bb ≠ aSound duties

*Record:*

008 901001abaaaaaa

153 bb ≠ aHE389 ≠ hTransportation and communications ≠ hWater  
transportation ≠ hWaterways ≠ jBy region or country

## Appendix B

### *Scheme:*

United States

### *Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
001 <control number>  
008 901001acaaaaaa  
084 0b ≠ alcc  
153 bb ≠ aHE392.8 ≠ cHE398 ≠ hTransportation and communications ≠ hWater  
transportation ≠ hWaterways ≠ hBy region or country ≠ jUnited States

### *Scheme:*

HE392.8 Periodicals, Societies, Serials

### *Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
001 <control number>  
008 901001aaaaaaa  
084 0b ≠ alcc  
153 bb ≠ aHE392.8 ≠ hTransportation and communications ≠ hWater  
transportation ≠ hWaterways ≠ hBy region or country ≠ hUnited States ≠ jPeriodicals.  
Societies, Serials

### *Scheme:*

HE393.A4 Congresses

### *Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
001 <control number>  
008 901001aaaaaaa  
084 0b ≠ alcc  
153 bb ≠ aHE393.A4 ≠ hTransportation and communications ≠ hWater transportation  
≠ hWaterways ≠ hBy region or country ≠ hUnited States ≠ jCongresses

### *Scheme:*

HE393.A5-.Z General works

### *Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
001 <control number>  
008 901001abaaaaaa  
084 0b ≠ alcc  
153 bb ≠ aHE393.A5 ≠ cHE393.Z ≠ hTransportation and communications ≠ hWater  
transportation ≠ hWaterways ≠ hBy region or country ≠ hUnited States ≠ jGeneral works

### *Scheme:*

HE393.5.A-Z By region or state, A-Z

### *Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
001 <control number>  
008 901001abaaaaaa  
084 0b ≠ alcc  
153 bb ≠ aHE393.5.A ≠ cHE393.5.Z ≠ hTransportation and communications ≠ hWater  
transportation ≠ hWaterways ≠ hBy region or country ≠ hUnited States ≠ jBy region or state,  
A-Z

*Scheme:*

Canals

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500

001 &lt;control number&gt;

008 901001acaaaaaa

084 0b ≠ alcc

153 bb ≠ aHE395 ≠ cHE396 ≠ hTransportation and communications ≠ hWater transportation  
≠ hWaterways ≠ hBy region or country ≠ hUnited States ≠ jCanals*Scheme:*

HE395.A1

Periodicals. Serials

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500

001 &lt;control number&gt;

008 901001abaaaaaa

084 0b ≠ alcc

153 bb ≠ aHE395.A1 ≠ hTransportation and communications ≠ hWater  
transportation ≠ hWaterways ≠ hBy region or country ≠ hUnited States ≠ hCanals  
≠ jPeriodicals. Serials*Scheme:*

HE395.A3

General works

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500

001 &lt;control number&gt;

008 901001abaaaaaa

084 0b ≠ alcc

153 bb ≠ aHE395.A3 ≠ hTransportation and communications ≠ hWater  
transportation ≠ hWaterways ≠ hBy region or country ≠ hUnited States ≠ hCanals ≠ jGeneral  
works*Scheme:*

HE395.A4-.Z

By region or state, A-Z

Under each state:

.x Periodicals. Serials

.x4 General works

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500

001 &lt;control number&gt;

008 901001abaaaaaa

084 0b ≠ alcc

153 bb ≠ aHE395.A4 ≠ cHE395.Z ≠ hTransportation and communications ≠ hWater  
transportation ≠ hWaterways ≠ hBy region or country ≠ hUnited States ≠ hCanals ≠ jBy region  
or state, A-Z

763 08 ≠ 81.1 ≠ iUnder each state:

763 10 ≠ 81.2 ≠ a.x ≠ jPeriodicals. Serials ≠ p153

763 10 ≠ 81.4 ≠ a.x4 ≠ jGeneral works ≠ p153

## Appendix B

### *Scheme:*

HE396.A-Z            Special canals. By name, A-Z

### *Record:*

LDR    \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500

001    <control number>

008    901001abaaaaaa

084    0b ‡ alcc

153    bb ‡ aHE396.A ‡ cHE396.Z ‡ hTransportation and communications ‡ hWater  
         transportation ‡ hWaterways ‡ hBy region or country ‡ hUnited States ‡ hCanals ‡ jSpecial  
         canals. By name, A-Z

### *Scheme:*

HE398            Great Lakes

### *Record:*

LDR    \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500

001    <control number>

008    901001aaaaaaaa

084    0b ‡ alcc

153    bb ‡ aHE398 ‡ hTransportation and communications ‡ hWater transportation  
         ‡ hWaterways ‡ hBy region or country ‡ hUnited States ‡ jGreat Lakes

---

## LCC TABLE, CLASS P-PZ (LITERATURE)

This example shows records for the first ten numbers in table 1 of the P-PZ schedule (Language and Literature tables). Since most entries in the table consist only of a topic and the number within the table to be added to a classification number from the schedule, the records tend to be quite short. There are no tracings or references within this table. Following is a reproduction of the first ten records of the table:

*Scheme:*

Table for languages (900 nos.)

*Record:*153  $\text{bb} \neq \text{zP-PZ1} \neq \text{a1} \neq \text{c840} \neq \text{jTable for languages (900 nos.)}$ *Scheme:*

Periodicals. Serials

*Record:*153  $\text{bb} \neq \text{zP-PZ1} \neq \text{a1.A1} \neq \text{c9} \neq \text{hTable for languages (900 nos.)} \neq \text{jPeriodicals. Serials}$ *Scheme:*

P-PZ1 1.A1-.A3

International

*Record:*153  $\text{bb} \neq \text{zP-PZ1} \neq \text{a1.A1} \neq \text{c1.A3} \neq \text{hTable for languages (900 nos.)} \neq \text{hPeriodicals. Serials} \neq \text{jInternational}$ *Scheme:*

P-PZ1 1.A4-Z

English and American

*Record:*153  $\text{bb} \neq \text{zP-PZ1} \neq \text{a1.A4} \neq \text{c1.Z} \neq \text{hTable for languages (900 nos.)} \neq \text{hPeriodicals. Serials} \neq \text{jEnglish and American}$ *Scheme:*

P-PZ1 2

French

*Record:*153  $\text{bb} \neq \text{zP-PZ1} \neq \text{a2} \neq \text{hTable for languages (900 nos.)} \neq \text{hPeriodicals. Serials} \neq \text{jFrench}$ *Scheme:*

P-PZ1 3

German

*Record:*153  $\text{bb} \neq \text{zP-PZ1} \neq \text{a3} \neq \text{hTable for languages (900 nos.)} \neq \text{hPeriodicals. Serials} \neq \text{jGerman}$ *Scheme:*

P-PZ1 9

Other (not A-Z)

*Record:*153  $\text{bb} \neq \text{zP-PZ1} \neq \text{a9} \neq \text{hTable for languages (900 nos.)} \neq \text{hPeriodicals. Serials} \neq \text{jOther (not A-Z)}$ *Scheme:*

P-PZ1 10

Annuals. Yearbooks, etc.

*Record:*153  $\text{bb} \neq \text{zP-PZ1} \neq \text{a10} \neq \text{hTable for languages (900 nos.)} \neq \text{jAnnuals. Yearbooks, etc.}$



## Appendix B

*Scheme:*

Societies

*Record:*

153  $\text{bb} \neq \text{zP-PZ1} \neq \text{a11} \neq \text{c19} \neq \text{hTable for languages (900 nos.)} \neq \text{jSocieties}$

*Scheme:*

P-PZ1 11.A1-.A3

International

*Record:*

153  $\text{bb} \neq \text{zP-PZ1} \neq \text{a11.A1} \neq \text{c11.A3} \neq \text{hTable for languages (900 nos.)} \neq \text{hSocieties} \neq \text{jInternational}$

---

**LCC TABLE, CLASS P-PZ (LITERATURE)**

This example shows records for all the classification numbers in table 23 of the P-PZ schedule (Language and Literature tables). Since most entries in the table consist only of a topic and the number within the table to be added to a classification number from the schedule, the records tend to be quite short. There are no tracings or references within this table.

*Scheme:*

History

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
 001 <control number>  
 008 901001bcaaaaaa  
 084 0b ‡ alcc  
 153 bb ‡ zP-PZ23 ‡ a0 ‡ c12 ‡ hLiterature ‡ jHistory

*Scheme:*

P-PZ23 0

Periodicals. Societies. Serials

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
 001 <control number>  
 008 901001baaaaaaa  
 084 0b ‡ alcc  
 153 bb ‡ zP-PZ23 ‡ a0 ‡ hTable for Literature (20 nos.) ‡ hHistory ‡ jPeriodicals. Societies. Serials

*Scheme:*

P-PZ23 0.15

Congresses

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
 001 <control number>  
 008 901001baaaaaaa  
 084 0b ‡ alcc  
 153 bb ‡ zP-PZ23 ‡ a0.15 ‡ hTable for Literature (20 nos.) ‡ hHistory ‡ jCongresses

*Scheme:*

P-PZ23 0.2

Encyclopedias. Dictionaries

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
 001 <control number>  
 008 901001baaaaaaa  
 084 0b ‡ alcc  
 153 bb ‡ zP-PZ23 ‡ a0.2 ‡ hTable for Literature (20 nos.) ‡ hHistory ‡ jEncyclopedias. Dictionaries

*Scheme:*

P-PZ23 0.3

Study and teaching

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
 001 <control number>  
 008 901001baaaaaaa  
 084 0b ‡ alcc  
 153 bb ‡ zP-PZ23 ‡ a0.3 ‡ hTable for Literature (20 nos.) ‡ hHistory ‡ jStudy and teaching

## Appendix B

### Scheme:

P-PZ23 0.6.A-Z

Biography of critics, historians, etc., A-Z

### Record:

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500

001 <control number>

008 901001baaaaaaa

084 0b + alcc

153 bb + zP-PZ23 + a0.6.A + c0.6.Z + hTable for Literature (20 nos.) + hHistory + jBiography of critics, historians, etc., A-Z

### Scheme:

P-PZ23 1

General works

### Record:

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500

001 <control number>

008 901001baaaaaaa

084 0b + alcc

153 bb + zP-PZ23 + a1 + hTable for Literature (20 nos.) + hHistory + jGeneral works

### Scheme:

P-PZ23 2

General special

### Record:

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500

001 <control number>

008 901001baaaaaaa

084 0b + alcc

153 bb + zP-PZ23 + a2 + hTable for Literature (20 nos.) + hHistory + jGeneral special

### Scheme:

P-PZ23 3

Addresses, essays, lectures

### Record:

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500

001 <control number>

008 901001baaaaaaa

084 0b + alcc

153 bb + zP-PZ23 + a3 + hTable for Literature (20 nos.) + hHistory + jAddresses, essays, lectures

### Scheme:

P-PZ23 4

Biography (Collective)

### Record:

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500

001 <control number>

008 901001baaaaaaa

084 0b + alcc

153 bb + zP-PZ23 + a4 + hTable for Literature (20 nos.) + hHistory + jBiography (Collective)

*Scheme:*

P-PZ23 5

Origins

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500

001 &lt;control number&gt;

008 901001baaaaaaa

084 0b ꞑ alcc

153 bb ꞑ zP-PZ23 ꞑ a5 ꞑ hTable for Literature (20 nos.) ꞑ hHistory ꞑ jOrigins

*Scheme:*

P-PZ23 6

To 1800

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500

001 &lt;control number&gt;

008 901001baaaaaaa

084 0b ꞑ alcc

153 bb ꞑ zP-PZ23 ꞑ a6 ꞑ hTable for Literature (20 nos.) ꞑ hHistory ꞑ jTo 1800

*Scheme:*

P-PZ23 7

19th century

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500

001 &lt;control number&gt;

008 901001baaaaaaa

084 0b ꞑ alcc

153 bb ꞑ zP-PZ23 ꞑ a7 ꞑ hTable for Literature (20 nos.) ꞑ hHistory ꞑ j19th century

*Scheme:*

P-PZ23 8

20th century

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500

001 &lt;control number&gt;

008 901001baaaaaaa

084 0b ꞑ alcc

153 bb ꞑ zP-PZ23 ꞑ a8 ꞑ hTable for Literature (20 nos.) ꞑ hHistory ꞑ j20th century

*Scheme:*

P-PZ23 10

Poetry

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500

001 &lt;control number&gt;

008 901001baaaaaaa

084 0b ꞑ alcc

153 bb ꞑ zP-PZ23 ꞑ a10 ꞑ hTable for Literature (20 nos.) ꞑ hHistory ꞑ jPoetry

*Scheme:*

P-PZ23 11

Drama

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500

001 &lt;control number&gt;

008 901001baaaaaaa

084 0b ꞑ alcc

153 bb ꞑ zP-PZ23 ꞑ a11 ꞑ hTable for Literature (20 nos.) ꞑ hHistory ꞑ jDrama

## Appendix B

### *Scheme:*

P-PZ23 12

Other

### *Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
001 <control number>  
008 901001baaaaaaa  
084 0b ꞑ alcc  
153 bb ꞑ zP-PZ23 ꞑ a12 ꞑ hTable for Literature (20 nos.) ꞑ hHistory ꞑ jOther

### *Scheme:*

Collections

### *Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
001 <control number>  
008 901001bcaaaaaaa  
084 0b ꞑ alcc  
153 bb ꞑ zP-PZ23 ꞑ a12.5 ꞑ c16.5 ꞑ hTable for Literature (20 nos.) ꞑ jCollections

### *Scheme:*

P-PZ23 12.5

Periodicals

### *Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
001 <control number>  
008 901001baaaaaaa  
084 0b ꞑ alcc  
153 bb ꞑ zP-PZ23 ꞑ a12.5 ꞑ hTable for Literature (20 nos.) ꞑ hCollections ꞑ jPeriodicals

### *Scheme:*

P-PZ23 13

Collections

### *Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
001 <control number>  
008 901001baaaaaaa  
084 0b ꞑ alcc  
153 bb ꞑ zP-PZ23 ꞑ a13 ꞑ hTable for Literature (20 nos.) ꞑ hCollections ꞑ jCollections

### *Scheme:*

P-PZ23 13.5.A-Z

Translations. By language, A-Z

### *Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
001 <control number>  
008 901001bbaaaaaa  
084 0b ꞑ alcc  
153 bb ꞑ zP-PZ23 ꞑ a13.5.A ꞑ c13.5.Z ꞑ hTable for Literature (20 nos.) ꞑ hCollections ꞑ jTranslations.  
By language, A-Z

### *Scheme:*

Poetry

### *Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
001 <control number>  
008 901001bcaaaaaaa  
084 0b ꞑ alcc  
153 bb ꞑ zP-PZ23 ꞑ a14 ꞑ c14.5 ꞑ hTable for Literature (20 nos.) ꞑ hCollections ꞑ jPoetry



*Scheme:*

P-PZ23 14

Collections

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
 001 <control number>  
 008 901001baaaaaaa  
 084 0b ‡ alcc  
 153 bb ‡ zP-PZ23 ‡ a14 ‡ hTable for Literature (20 nos.) ‡ hCollections ‡ hPoetry ‡ jCollections

*Scheme:*

P-PZ23 14.5.A-Z

Translations. By language, A-Z

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
 001 <control number>  
 008 901001bbaaaaaa  
 084 0b ‡ alcc  
 153 bb ‡ zP-PZ23 ‡ a14.5.A ‡ c14.5.Z ‡ hTable for Literature (20 nos.)  
 ‡ hCollections ‡ hPoetry ‡ jTranslations. By language, A-Z

*Scheme:*

Drama

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
 001 <control number>  
 008 901001bcaaaaaa  
 084 0b ‡ alcc  
 153 bb ‡ zP-PZ23 ‡ a15 ‡ c15.5 ‡ hTable for Literature (20 nos.) ‡ hCollections ‡ jDrama

*Scheme:*

P-PZ23 15

Collections

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
 001 <control number>  
 008 901001bbaaaaaa  
 084 0b ‡ alcc  
 153 bb ‡ zP-PZ23 ‡ a15 ‡ hTable for Literature (20 nos.) ‡ hCollections ‡ hDrama ‡ jCollections

*Scheme:*

P-PZ23 15.5.A-Z

Translations. By language, A-Z

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
 001 <control number>  
 008 901001baaaaaaa  
 084 0b ‡ alcc  
 153 bb ‡ zP-PZ23 ‡ a15.5.A ‡ c15.5.Z ‡ hTable for Literature (20 nos.)  
 ‡ hCollections ‡ hDrama ‡ jTranslations. By language, A-Z

## Appendix B

### Scheme:

Other

### Record:

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
001 <control number>  
008 901001bcaaaaaa  
084 0b + alcc  
153 bb + zP-PZ23 + a16 + c16.5 + hTable for Literature (20 nos.) + hCollections + jOther

### Scheme:

P-PZ23 16

Collections

### Record:

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
001 <control number>  
008 901001baaaaaaa  
084 0b + alcc  
153 bb + zP-PZ23 + a16 + hTable for Literature (20 nos.) + hCollections + hOther + jCollections

### Scheme:

P-PZ23 16.5.A-Z

Translations. By language A-Z

### Record:

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
001 <control number>  
008 901001bbaaaaaa  
084 0b + alcc  
153 bb + zP-PZ23 + a16.5.A + c16.5.Z + hTable for Literature (20 nos.)  
+ hCollections + hOther + jTranslations. By language, A-Z

### Scheme:

P-PZ23 17.A-Z

Local, A-Z Table P-PZ26

### Record:

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
001 <control number>  
008 901001bbaaaaaa  
084 0b + alcc  
153 bb + zP-PZ23 + a17.A + c17.Z + hTable for Literature (20 nos.) + jLocal, A-Z  
762 bb + zP-PZ26

### Scheme:

P-PZ23 19.A-Z

Individual authors or works, A-Z  
Each author or work subarranged by Table P-PZ40 or P-PZ43,  
unless otherwise specified

### Record:

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
001 <control number>  
008 901001bbaaaaaa  
084 0b + alcc  
153 bb + zP-PZ23 + a19.A + c19.Z + hTable for Literature (20 nos.) + jIndividual authors or works, A-Z  
761 b0 + iEach author or work subarranged by Table + zP-PZ40 + ior + zP-PZ43, + iunless otherwise  
specified  
762 bb + zP-PZ40  
762 bb + zP-PZ43

## FULL RECORD EXAMPLES DDC SCHEDULE, CLASS 003

The following example illustrates MARC classification records for classification numbers between 003.3-003.71 (computer modeling and simulation; theory of communication and control; kinds of systems; large-scale systems) from volume 2 of the *Dewey Decimal Classification*, 21th edition. Entries from the *DDC* manual are also encoded in the records when they refer to the classification number in field 153. Examples are shown in numerical tag order; however it may be necessary in some cases to add a subfield #8 (Field link and sequence number) to 6XX and 76X fields to ensure the correct ordering of fields.

### Scheme:

#### 003.3 Computer modeling and simulation

Standard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading

Class here data processing and computer science applied to systems, computer implementation of mathematical models of systems, interdisciplinary works on computer modeling and simulation

Add to base number 003.3 the numbers following 00 in 004-006, e.g., computer simulation languages 003.3513

*For computer modeling and simulation applied to a specific subject, see the subject plus notation --0113 from Table 1, e.g., computer modeling in economics 330.0113*

*See Manual at T1--0113 vs. T1--0285*

### Record:

```
LDR *****nwbbb22*****nbb4500
001 <control number>
008 901001aaaaaaaa
084 0b#addc#c21
153 bb#a003.3#hGeneralities#hSystems#jComputer modeling and simulation
253 2b#iFor computer modeling and simulation applied to a specific subject, see the subject plus
notation#z1#a0113#ifrom Table 1, e.g., computer modeling in economics#a330.0113
453 0b#wm#a003.0285#hGeneralities#hSystems#hMiscellany#hAuxiliary techniques and
procedures; apparatus, equipment, materials#kAuxiliary techniques and procedures#jData
processing. Computer applications
553 0b#wk#a001.42#hGeneralities#hKnowledge#hResearch; statistical methods#jResearch
methods#tcomputer modeling and simulation
553 0b#wk#a004#hGeneralities#jData processing. Computer science#tcomputer modeling
and simulation
680 1b#iClass here data processing and computer science applied to systems, computer
implementation of mathematical models of systems, interdisciplinary works on computer
modeling and simulation
684 0b#z1#a0285#ivs.#z1#a0113#jData processing. Computer applications vs. [Computer
modeling and simulation]
685 03#tComputer modeling and simulation#b003#d19890306#220
753 bb#aComputer modeling
753 bb#aComputer simulation
761 b0#iStandard subdivisions are added for either or both topics in heading
761 b0#iAdd to base number#b003.3#ithe numbers following#r00#iin#d004#c006,#ie.g.,
computer simulation languages#e003.3513
765 1b#b003.3#a003.3#r00#s513#u003.3513
765 1b#b003#z1#a0#z1#s0285#u003.0285
```

## Appendix B

### Scheme:

#### 003.5 Theory of communication and control

In living and nonliving systems

Including bionics

Class here cybernetics, interdisciplinary works on control and stability of systems

Class social aspects of and interdisciplinary works on communication in systems in 302.2

*For artificial intelligence, see 006.3; for control theory in automation engineering, see 629.8312. For control and stability of systems in a specific subject, see the subject plus notation --0115 from Table 1, e.g., control and stability of systems in general engineering 620.00115*

*See Manual at 003.5 vs. 629.8*

### Manual:

003.5 vs. 629.8

#### Theory of communication and control vs. Automatic control engineering

Class interdisciplinary works on control of living and nonliving systems in 003.5 or with various specific kinds of systems in 003.7-.8. Class automatic control of man-made physical systems in 629.8. If in doubt, prefer 003.5.

### Record:

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwb22\*\*\*\*\*nb4500

001 <control number>

008 901001aaaaaaaa

084 0b + addc + c21

253 2b + iFor control and stability of systems in a specific subject, see the subject plus notation + z1 + a0115 + ifrom Table 1, e.g., control and stability of systems in general engineering + a620.00115

153 bb + a003.5 + hGeneralities + hSystems + jTheory of communication and control

553 0b + wkh + a515.64 + hNatural sciences and mathematics + hMathematics + hAnalysis + hOther analytic methods + jCalculus of variations + tinterdisciplinary works on control theory

553 0b + wkh + a629.8312 + hTechnology (Applied sciences) + hEngineering and allied operations + hOther branches of engineering + hAutomatic control engineering + hClosed-loop (Feedback) systems + hGeneral principles + jControl theory + tinterdisciplinary works on control theory

680 1b + iln living and nonliving systems

680 0b + ilIncluding bionics

680 1b + iClass here cybernetics, interdisciplinary works on the control and stability of systems

684 0b + a003.5 + ivs. + a629.8 + jTheory of communication and control vs. Automatic control engineering

684 1b + iClass interdisciplinary works on control of living and nonliving systems in + a003.5 + ior with various specific kinds of systems in + a003.7 + c003.8. + iClass automatic control of man-made physical systems in + a629.8. + ilf in doubt, prefer + a003.5.

685 03 + tTheory of communication and control + b003 + d19890306 + 220

685 00 + tCybernetics + iformerly located in + b001.53 + d19890306 + 220

753 bb + aControl theory

753 bb + aControl theory + bsystems

753 bb + aBionics

753 bb + aCybernetics

753 bb + aProcess control

753 bb + aSystems control

753 bb + aSystems stability



*Record:*

008 901001aaaaaaaa  
 153 bb ‡ a302.2 ‡ hSocial sciences ‡ kSpecific topics in sociology and anthropology ‡ hSocial interaction ‡ jCommunication  
 553 Ob ‡ wkh ‡ a003.5 ‡ hGeneralities ‡ hSystems ‡ jTheory of communication and control ‡ tsocial aspects of and interdisciplinary works on communication in systems

*Record:*

008 901001aaaaaaaa  
 153 bb ‡ a006.3 ‡ hGeneralities ‡ hSpecial computer methods ‡ jArtificial intelligence  
 553 Ob ‡ wjg ‡ a003.5 ‡ hGeneralities ‡ hSystems ‡ jTheory of communication and control ‡ tartificial intelligence

*Scheme:***003.52 Perception theory**

Class computer vision in 006.37, class psychology of human perception in 153.7; class perception in animals in 573.87

*See also 006.4 for computer pattern recognition*

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
 001 <control number>  
 008 901001aaaaaaaa  
 084 Ob ‡ addc ‡ c21  
 153 bb ‡ a003.52 ‡ hGeneralities ‡ hSystems ‡ hTheory of communication and control ‡ jPerception theory  
 685 00 ‡ tPerception theory ‡ iformerly located in ‡ b001.534 ‡ d19890306 ‡ 220  
 753 bb ‡ aPerception theory

*Record:*

008 901001aaaaaaaa  
 153 bb ‡ a006.37 ‡ hGeneralities ‡ hSpecial computer methods ‡ hArtificial intelligence ‡ jComputer vision  
 553 Ob ‡ wk ‡ a003.52 ‡ hGeneralities ‡ hSystems ‡ hTheory of communication and control ‡ jPerception theory ‡ tcomputer vision

*Record:*

008 901001aaaaaaaa  
 153 bb ‡ a153.7 ‡ hPhilosophy, paranormal phenomena, psychology ‡ hPsychology ‡ kSpecific topics in psychology ‡ hConscious mental processes and intelligence ‡ jPerceptual processes  
 553 Ob ‡ wk ‡ a003.52 ‡ hGeneralities ‡ hSystems ‡ hTheory of communication and control ‡ jPerception theory ‡ tpsychology of human perception

*Record:*

008 901001aaaaaaaa  
 153 bb ‡ a573.87 ‡ hNatural sciences and mathematics ‡ kLife sciences ‡ hLife sciences. Biology ‡ kInternal biological processes and structures ‡ hSpecific physiological systems in animals, regional histology and physiology ‡ hNervous and sensory systems ‡ jSense organs  
 553 Ob ‡ wk ‡ a003.52 ‡ hGeneralities ‡ hSystems ‡ hTheory of communication and control ‡ jPerception theory ‡ tperception in animals



## Appendix B

### Record:

008 901001aaaaaaa

153  $\text{bb} \neq \text{a006.4} \neq \text{hGeneralities} \neq \text{hSpecial computer methods} \neq \text{jComputer pattern recognition}$

553  $\text{0b} \neq \text{wl} \neq \text{a003.52} \neq \text{hGeneralities} \neq \text{hSystems} \neq \text{hTheory of communication and control}$   
 $\neq \text{jPerception theory} \neq \text{tcomputer pattern recognition}$

### Scheme:

#### 003.54 Information theory

Theory concerning measurement of quantities of information; accuracy in transmission of messages subject to noise (unwanted, usually random, signals), distortion, and transmission failure; and methods of coding for efficient, accurate transmission

Class here coding theory

Class information theory in communications engineering in 621.3822, without using notation T1--01154 from Table 1; class coding for purpose of limiting access to information (cryptography) in 652.8. Class information theory in communications engineering of a specific kind of communications with the kind, without using notation --01154 from Table 1, e.g., radio 621.384; class information theory in any other specific subject with the subject, plus notation --01154 from Table 1, e.g., information theory in economics 330.01154

### Record:

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nw~~bbb~~22\*\*\*\*\*n~~bb~~4500

001 <control number>

008 901001aaaaaaa

084  $\text{0b} \neq \text{addc} \neq \text{c21}$

153  $\text{bb} \neq \text{a003.54} \neq \text{hGeneralities} \neq \text{hSystems} \neq \text{hTheory of communication and control} \neq \text{jInformation theory}$

253  $\text{2b} \neq \text{iClass information theory in communications engineering in} \neq \text{a621.3822}, \neq \text{iwithout using notation} \neq \text{z1} \neq \text{a01154} \neq \text{ifrom Table 1}$

253  $\text{2b} \neq \text{iClass information theory in communications engineering of a specific kind of communications with the kind, without using notation} \neq \text{z1} \neq \text{a01154} \neq \text{ifrom Table 1, e.g., radio} \neq \text{a621.384}; \neq \text{iclass information theory in any other specific subject with the subject, plus notation} \neq \text{z1} \neq \text{a01154} \neq \text{ifrom Table 1, e.g., information theory in economics} \neq \text{a330.01154}$

553  $\text{0b} \neq \text{wl} \neq \text{a020} \neq \text{hGeneralities} \neq \text{jLibrary and information sciences} \neq \text{tinformation theory}$

553  $\text{0b} \neq \text{wl} \neq \text{a302.2} \neq \text{hSocial sciences} \neq \text{kSpecific topics in sociology and anthropology} \neq \text{hSocial interaction} \neq \text{jCommunication} \neq \text{tinformation theory}$

553  $\text{0b} \neq \text{wl} \neq \text{a621.3822} \neq \text{hTechnology (Applied sciences)} \neq \text{hEngineering and allied operations} \neq \text{hApplied physics} \neq \text{hElectrical engineering; lighting; superconductivity; magnetic engineering; applied optics; parafotic technology; electronics; communications engineering; computers} \neq \text{hElectronics, communications engineering} \neq \text{hCommunications engineering} \neq \text{jSignal processing} \neq \text{tinterdisciplinary works on information theory}$

680  $\text{1b} \neq \text{iTheory concerning measurement of quantities of information; accuracy in transmission of messages subject to noise (unwanted, usually random, signals), distortion, and transmission failure; and methods of coding for efficient, accurate transmission}$

680  $\text{1b} \neq \text{iClass here coding theory}$

685  $\text{00} \neq \text{tInformation theory} \neq \text{iformerly located in} \neq \text{b001.539} \neq \text{d19890306} \neq \text{220}$

685  $\text{00} \neq \text{tCoding theory} \neq \text{iformerly located in} \neq \text{b519.4} \neq \text{d19890306} \neq \text{220}$

753  $\text{bb} \neq \text{aCoding theory}$

753  $\text{bb} \neq \text{aInformation theory}$

753  $\text{bb} \neq \text{aSignal theory}$

753  $\text{bb} \neq \text{aSignal theory} \neq \text{bsystems}$

765 1b+z1+b011+z1+a011+r003+s54+z1+u01154  
 765 1b+b330+z1+a0+z1+s011+u330.01154  
 765 1b+b330.011+z1+a011+r003+s54+u330.01154

*Scheme:*

003.56 Decision theory

*See also 153.83 for decision theory in psychology, 511.65 for decision theory in combinatorial analysis, 658.40301 for decision theory in management*

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwb22\*\*\*\*\*nb4500

001 <control number>

008 901001aaaaaaa

084 0b+addc+c21

153 bb+a003.56+hGeneralities+hSystems+hTheory of communication and control+jDecision theory

685 03+tDecision theory+b003+d19890306+220

753 bb+aDecision theory

*Record*

008 901001aaaaaaa

153 bb+a153.83+hPhilosophy, paranormal phenomena, psychology+hPsychology+kSpecific topics in psychology+hConscious mental processes and intelligence+hWill (Volition)+jChoice and decision

*Record:*

008 901001aaaaaaa

153 bb+a511.65+hNatural sciences and mathematics+hMathematics+hGeneral principles of mathematics+hCombinatorial analysis+jChoice

553 0b+wl+a003.56+hGeneralities+hSystems+hTheory of communication and control+jDecision theory+tddecision theory in combinatorial analysis

*Record:*

008 901001aaaaaaba

153 bb+a658.40301+hTechnology (Applied sciences)+hManagement and auxiliary services+hGeneral management+hExecutive management+kSpecific executive management activities+hDecision making and information management+jPhilosophy and theory of decision making

553 0b+wl+a003.56+hGeneralities+hSystems+hTheory of communication and control+jDecision theory+tddecision theory in management

*Scheme:*

003.7 Kinds of systems

Including deterministic, hierarchical, lumped-parameter, self-organizing, small-scale systems

*For systems distinguished in relation to time, see 003.8*

*See Manual at 003.7*

## Appendix B

### Manual:

003.7

#### Kinds of systems

Many kinds of systems are defined in terms of the equations used to model them, e.g., distributed-parameter systems are defined as systems governed by partial differential equations. Other equations may be used to model the behavior of the same real-world system. Class a work about a specific kind of system according to the way the work describes the system, e.g., a work that discusses applying the mathematics of stochastic (random) processes to systems 003.76.

### Record:

```
LDR *****nwbbb22*****nbb4500
001 <control number>
008 901001aaaaaaaa
084 0b#addc#c21
153 bb#a003.7#hGeneralities#hSystems#jKinds of systems
680 0b#iIncluding deterministic, hierarchical, lumped-parameter, self-organizing, small-scale
systems
684 0b#a003.7#jKinds of systems
684 1b#iMany kinds of systems are defined in terms of the equations used to model them, e.g.,
distributed-parameter systems are defined as systems governed by partial differential
equations. Other equations may be used to model the behavior of the same real-world
system. Class a work about a specific kind of system according to the way the work
describes the system, e.g., a work that discusses applying the mathematics of stochastic
(random) processes to systems#a003.76.
685 03#tKinds of systems#b003#d19890306#220
685 00#tSelf-organizing systems#iformerly located in#b001.533#d19890306#220
753 bb#aSystems
753 bb#aDeterministic systems
753 bb#aHierarchical systems
753 bb#aLumped-parameter systems
753 bb#aSelf-organizing systems
753 bb#aSmall-scale systems
```

### Record:

```
008 901001aaaaaaaa
153 bb#a003.8#hGeneralities#hSystems#jSystems distinguished in relation to time
553 0b#wjg#a003.7#hGeneralities#hSystems#jKinds of systems#tsystems distinguished in
relation to time
```

### Scheme:

#### 003.71 Large-scale systems

Limited to works emphasizing that the systems are large

### Record:

```
LDR *****nwbbb22*****nbb4500
001 <control number>
008 901001aaaaaaaa
084 0b#addc#c21
153 bb#a003.71#hGeneralities#hSystems#hKinds of systems#jLarge-scale systems
680 1b#iLimited to works emphasizing that the systems are large
685 03#tLarge-scale systems#b003#d19890306#220
753 bb#aLarge-scale systems
```

---

## DDC TABLE, TABLE 6 (SOUTH AMERICAN NATIVE LANGUAGES)

The example shows the section of *DDC* table 6 (Languages) which covers South American native languages, notation -98 from volume 1, pages 486-487 of the *Dewey Decimal Classification*, edition 21.

*Scheme:*

--98 South American native languages

Including Araucanian, Cahuapanan, Mataco-Guaicuru, Tacanan, Uru-Chipaya, Witotoan, Yanomam languages; Hixkaryana, Warao, Yaruro

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbbb4500

001 <control number>

008 901001baaaaaaa

084 0b + addc + c21

153 bb + z6 + a98 + hLanguages + hOther languages + jSouth American native languages

553 1b + wjg + z6 + a97 + hLanguages + hOther languages + jNorth American native languages + tSouth American native languages

553 1b + wj + z6 + a9741 + hLanguages + hOther languages + hNorth American native languages + h Penutian, Mixe-Zoquean, Mayan, Uto-Aztecan, Kiowa-Tanoan languages + jPenutian, Mixe-Zoquean, Mayan languages + tAraucanian, Uru-Chipaya languages

553 1b + wj + z6 + a982 + hLanguages + hOther languages + hSouth American native languages + j Chibchan and Paezan languages + tYanomam languages, Warao

553 1b + wanaa + z6 + a983 + hLanguages + hOther languages + hSouth American native languages + j Quechuan (Kechuan), Aymaran, Tucanoan, Tupí, Arawakan languages + tYaruro

553 1b + wj + z6 + a9837 + hLanguages + hOther languages + hSouth American native languages + h Quechuan (Kechuan), Aymaran, Tucanoan, Tupí, Arawakan languages + jJivaroan languages + tYaruro

553 1b + wj + z6 + a984 + hLanguages + hOther languages + hSouth American native languages + j Carib, Macro-Ge, Nambiquaran, Panoan languages + tHixkaryana, Mataco-Guaicuru, Tacanan, Witotoan languages

680 0b + including Araucanian, Cahuapanan, Mataco-Guaicuru, Tacanan, Uru-Chipaya, Witotoan, Yanomam languages; Hixkaryana, Warao, Yaruro

753 bb + aAmerican Indian languages + cSouth America

753 bb + aAmerican native languages + cSouth America

753 bb + aAmerind languages + cSouth America

753 bb + aAndoke language

753 bb + aAndoque language

753 bb + aAraona language

753 bb + aAraucanian language

753 bb + aCahuapanan languages

753 bb + aCatuquina language (Catuquinan)

753 bb + aChapacura language

753 bb + aChayahuita language

753 bb + aChipaya language

753 bb + aChulupí language

753 bb + aGuaicuru languages

753 bb + aGuaycuruan languages

753 bb + aHixkaryana language

753 bb + aHixkaryana language



## Appendix B

753 bb ‡ aIndian languages (American) ‡ cSouth America  
753 bb ‡ aMapuche language  
753 bb ‡ aMapudungu language  
753 bb ‡ aMataco languages  
753 bb ‡ aMataco-Guaicuru languages  
753 bb ‡ aMurui language  
753 bb ‡ aNative American languages ‡ cSouth America  
753 bb ‡ aSouth American native languages  
753 bb ‡ aTacanan languages  
753 bb ‡ aTucuna language  
753 bb ‡ aUru-Chipaya languages  
753 bb ‡ aWaica language  
753 bb ‡ aWarao language  
753 bb ‡ aWarrau language  
753 bb ‡ aWitotoan languages  
753 bb ‡ aYanomam languages  
753 bb ‡ aYanomamo language  
753 bb ‡ aYaruro language

### *Scheme:*

--982 Chibchan and Paezan languages

Class Yanomam languages, Warao in --98

*For Chibchan languages of North America, see --978*

### *Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwb22\*\*\*\*\*nb4500  
001 <control number>  
008 901001baaaaaaa  
084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21  
153 bb ‡ z6 ‡ a982 ‡ hLanguages ‡ hOther languages ‡ hSouth American native languages ‡ j  
Chibchan and Paezan languages  
553 1b ‡ wj ‡ z6 ‡ a978 ‡ hLanguages ‡ hOther languages ‡ hNorth American native languages ‡ j  
Chibchan languages of North America, Misumalpan languages ‡ tcomprehensive works on  
Chibchan language  
753 bb ‡ aCayapa language  
753 bb ‡ aChachi language  
753 bb ‡ aChibchan languages  
753 bb ‡ aCoconuco language  
753 bb ‡ aCuna language  
753 bb ‡ aGuambiano language  
753 bb ‡ aKuna language  
753 bb ‡ aMogux language  
753 bb ‡ aPaez language  
753 bb ‡ aPaezan languages

### *Record:*

008 901001baaaaaaa  
153 bb ‡ z6 ‡ a978 ‡ hLanguages ‡ hOther languages ‡ hNorth American native languages ‡ j  
Chibchan languages of North America, Misumalpan languages  
553 bb ‡ wjh ‡ z6 ‡ a982 ‡ hLanguages ‡ hOther languages ‡ hSouth American native languages ‡ j  
Chibchan and Paezan languages ‡ tChibchan languages of North America



*Record:*

008 901001baaaaaaa  
 153 bb ‡ z6 ‡ a98 ‡ hLanguages ‡ hOther languages ‡ jSouth American native languages  
 553 1b ‡ wj ‡ z6 ‡ a982 ‡ hLanguages ‡ hOther languages ‡ hSouth American native languages ‡ j  
 Chibchan and Paezan languages ‡ tYanomam languages, Warao

*Scheme:*

--983 Quechuan (Kechuan), Aymaran, Tucanoan, Tupí, Arawakan languages

Former heading: Andean-Equatorial languages

Use of this number for Yaruro discontinued; class in --98

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
 001 <control number>  
 008 901001baaaaaaa  
 084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21  
 153 bb ‡ z6 ‡ a983 ‡ hLanguages ‡ hOther languages ‡ hSouth American native languages ‡ j  
 Quechuan (Kechuan), Aymaran, Tucanoan, Tupí, Arawakan languages  
 680 1b ‡ iFormer heading: Andean-Equatorial languages  
 685 22 ‡ iUse of this number for ‡ tYaruro ‡ idiscontinued; class in ‡ z6 ‡ a98 ‡ d19960930 ‡ 221

*Record:*

008 901001baaaaaaa  
 153 bb ‡ z6 ‡ a98 ‡ hLanguages ‡ hOther languages ‡ jSouth American native languages  
 553 1b ‡ wanaa ‡ z6 ‡ a983 ‡ hLanguages ‡ hOther languages ‡ hSouth American native  
 languages ‡ jQuechuan (Kechuan), Aymaran, Tucanoan, Tupí, Arawakan languages ‡ tYaruro

*Scheme:*

--983 2 Quechuan (Kechuan) and Aymaran languages

Former heading: Andean languages

*Record:*

LDR\*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
 001 <control number>  
 008 901001baaaaaaa  
 084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21  
 153 bb ‡ z6 ‡ a9832 ‡ hLanguages ‡ hOther languages ‡ hSouth American native languages ‡ h  
 Quechuan (Kechuan), Aymaran, Tucanoan, Tupí, Arawakan languages ‡ jQuechuan  
 (Kechuan) and Aymaran languages  
 680 1b ‡ iFormer heading: Andean languages  
 753 bb ‡ aAndean languages

*Scheme:*

--983 23 Quechuan (Kechuan) languages Quechua (Kechua)

Aymaran languages relocated to --98324

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
 001 <control number>  
 008 901001baaaaaaa  
 084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21  
 153 bb ‡ z6 ‡ a98323 ‡ hLanguages ‡ hOther languages ‡ hSouth American native languages ‡ h  
 Quechuan (Kechuan), Aymaran, Tucanoan, Tupí, Arawakan languages ‡ hQuechuan  
 (Kechuan) and Aymaran languages ‡ jQuechuan (Kechuan) languages. Quechua (Kechua)

## Appendix B

685 20 ‡ tAymaran languages ‡ irelocated to ‡ z6 ‡ a98324 ‡ d19960930 ‡ 221  
753 ‡ ‡ aKechua language  
753 ‡ ‡ aKechuan languages  
753 ‡ ‡ aQuechua language  
753 ‡ ‡ aQuechuan languages

### *Scheme:*

--983 24 Aymaran languages [*formerly* --98323] Aymara

### *Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nw‡‡‡‡22\*\*\*\*\*n‡‡‡4500  
001 <control number>  
008 901001baaaaaaa  
084 0‡ ‡ addc ‡ c21  
153 ‡‡ ‡ z6 ‡ a98324 ‡ hLanguages ‡ hOther languages ‡ hSouth American native languages ‡ h  
Quechuan (Kechuan), Aymaran, Tucanoan, Tupí, Arawakan languages ‡ hQuechuan  
(Kechuan) and Aymaran languages ‡ jAymaran languages. Aymara  
553 1‡ ‡ z6 ‡ a98323 ‡ hLanguages ‡ hOther languages ‡ hSouth American native languages ‡ h  
Quechuan (Kechuan), Aymaran, Tucanoan, Tupí, Arawakan languages ‡ hQuechuan  
(Kechuan) and Aymaran languages ‡ jQuechuan (Kechuan) languages. Quechua  
(Kechua) ‡ tAymaran languages. Aymara  
685 21 ‡ tAymaran languages ‡ iformerly ‡ z6 ‡ a98323 ‡ d19960930 ‡ 221  
753 ‡‡ ‡ aAymara language  
753 ‡‡ ‡ aAymaran languages

### *Scheme:*

--983 5 Tucanoan languages

Including Tucano

### *Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nw‡‡‡‡22\*\*\*\*\*n‡‡‡4500  
001 <control number>  
008 901001baaaaaaa  
084 0‡ ‡ addc ‡ c21  
153 ‡‡ ‡ z6 ‡ a9835 ‡ hLanguages ‡ hOther languages ‡ hSouth American native languages ‡ h  
Quechuan (Kechuan), Aymaran, Tucanoan, Tupí, Arawakan languages ‡ jTucanoan languages  
680 0‡ ‡ iIncluding Tucano  
685 03 ‡ iexpanded from ‡ z6 ‡ b983 ‡ d19960930 ‡ 221  
753 ‡‡ ‡ aTucano language  
753 ‡‡ ‡ aTucanoan languages  
753 ‡‡ ‡ aTukano language  
753 ‡‡ ‡ aTukanoan languages  
753 ‡‡ ‡ aYahuna language

### *Scheme:*

--983 7 Jivaroan languages

Class Yaruro in --98

*For Jivaro proper, see --98372*

### *Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nw‡‡‡‡22\*\*\*\*\*n‡‡‡4500  
001 <control number>  
008 901001baaaaaaa  
084 0‡ ‡ addc ‡ c21

153 **bb**  $\neq$  z6  $\neq$  a9837  $\neq$  hLanguages  $\neq$  hOther languages  $\neq$  hSouth American native languages  $\neq$  h  
 Quechuan (Kechuan), Aymaran, Tucanoan, Tupí, Arawakan languages  $\neq$  jJivaroan languages  
 685 03  $\neq$  iexpanded from  $\neq$  z6  $\neq$  b983  $\neq$  d19960930  $\neq$  221  
 753 **bb**  $\neq$  aJivaran languages  
 753 **bb**  $\neq$  aJivaroan languages

*Record:*

008 901001baaaaaaa  
 153 **bb**  $\neq$  z6  $\neq$  a98  $\neq$  hLanguages  $\neq$  hOther languages  $\neq$  jSouth American native languages  
 553 1**b**  $\neq$  wj  $\neq$  z6  $\neq$  a9837  $\neq$  hLanguages  $\neq$  hOther languages  $\neq$  hSouth American native  
 languages  $\neq$  h Quechuan (Kechuan), Aymaran, Tucanoan, Tupí, Arawakan  
 languages  $\neq$  jJivaroan languages  $\neq$  tYaruro

*Record:*

008 901001baaaaaaa  
 153 **bb**  $\neq$  z6  $\neq$  a98372  $\neq$  hLanguages  $\neq$  hOther languages  $\neq$  hSouth American native languages  
 $\neq$  hQuechuan (Kechuan), Aymaran, Tucanoan, Tupí, Arawakan languages  $\neq$  jJivaroan  
 languages  $\neq$  jJivaro proper. Shuar  
 553 1**b**  $\neq$  wjh  $\neq$  z6  $\neq$  a9837  $\neq$  hLanguages  $\neq$  hOther languages  $\neq$  ahSouth American native languages  
 $\neq$  hQuechuan (Kechuan), Aymaran, Tucanoan, Tupí, Arawakan languages  $\neq$  jJivaroan  
 languages  $\neq$  tJivaro proper

*Scheme:*

--983 72 Jivaro proper Shuar

Including Huambisa

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nw**bb**22\*\*\*\*\*n**bb**4500  
 001 <control number>  
 008 901001baaaaaaa  
 084 0**b**  $\neq$  addc  $\neq$  c21  
 153 **bb**  $\neq$  z6  $\neq$  a98372  $\neq$  hLanguages  $\neq$  hOther languages  $\neq$  hSouth American native languages  $\neq$  h  
 Quechuan (Kechuan), Aymaran, Tucanoan, Tupí, Arawakan languages  $\neq$  jJivaroan languages  
 $\neq$  jJivaro proper. Shuar  
 553 1**b**  $\neq$  wjh  $\neq$  z6  $\neq$  a9837  $\neq$  hLanguages  $\neq$  hOther languages  $\neq$  hSouth American native languages  
 $\neq$  hQuechuan (Kechuan), Aymaran, Tucanoan, Tupí, Arawakan languages  $\neq$  jJivaroan  
 languages  $\neq$  tJivaro proper  
 680 0**b**  $\neq$  iIncluding Huambisa  
 685 03  $\neq$  iexpanded from  $\neq$  z6  $\neq$  b983  $\neq$  d19960930  $\neq$  221  
 753 **bb**  $\neq$  aHuambisa language  
 753 **bb**  $\neq$  aJivaro language  
 753 **bb**  $\neq$  aJivaroa language  
 753 **bb**  $\neq$  aShuar language  
 753 **bb**  $\neq$  aShuara language

*Scheme:*

--983 8 Tupí languages

Including Munduruku, Sirionó; Oyampi

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nw**bb**22\*\*\*\*\*n**bb**4500  
 001 <control number>  
 008 901001baaaaaaa  
 084 0**b**  $\neq$  addc  $\neq$  c21

## Appendix B

153 bb ‡ z6 ‡ a9838 ‡ hLanguages ‡ hOther languages ‡ hSouth American native languages ‡ h  
Quechuan (Kechuan), Aymaran, Tucanoan, Tupí, Arawakan languages ‡ jTupí languages  
680 0b ‡ iIncluding Munduruku, Sirionó; Oyampi  
685 03 ‡ iexpanded from ‡ z6 ‡ b983 ‡ d19960930 ‡ 221  
753 bb ‡ aCocama language  
753 bb ‡ aMundurucu language  
753 bb ‡ aMunduruku language  
753 bb ‡ aOyampi language  
753 bb ‡ aSirionó language  
753 bb ‡ aTupí languages  
753 bb ‡ aTupian languages  
753 bb ‡ aWayampi language  
753 bb ‡ aWayãpi language

### *Scheme:*

--983 82 Narrow Tupí group    Guaraní

### *Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
001 <control number>  
008 901001baaaaaaa  
084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21  
153 bb ‡ z6 ‡ a98382 ‡ hLanguages ‡ hOther languages ‡ hSouth American native languages ‡ h  
Quechuan (Kechuan), Aymaran, Tucanoan, Tupí, Arawakan languages ‡ hTupí languages ‡ j  
Narrow Tupí group. Guaraní  
685 03 ‡ iexpanded from ‡ z6 ‡ b983 ‡ d19960930 ‡ 221  
753 bb ‡ aChiriguano language  
753 bb ‡ aGuaraní language

### *Scheme:*

--983 829 Tupí (Nhengatu)

### *Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
001 <control number>  
008 901001baaaaaaa  
084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21  
153 bb ‡ z6 ‡ a983829 ‡ hLanguages ‡ hOther languages ‡ hSouth American native languages ‡ h  
Quechuan (Kechuan), Aymaran, Tucanoan, Tupí, Arawakan languages ‡ hTupí languages ‡ h  
Narrow Tupí group. Guaraní ‡ jTupí (Nhengatu)  
685 03 ‡ iexpanded from ‡ z6 ‡ b983 ‡ d19960930 ‡ 221  
753 bb ‡ aNeengatu language  
753 bb ‡ aNheengatu language  
753 bb ‡ aNhengatu language  
753 bb ‡ aTupí language

### *Scheme:*

--983 9 Arawakan languages

Class Arawakan languages of Central America and West Indies in --979

### *Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
001 <control number>  
008 901001baaaaaaa  
084 0b ‡ addc ‡ c21



- 153 bb z6 a9839 hLanguages hOther languages hSouth American native languages h Quechuan (Kechuan), Aymaran, Tucanoan, Tupí, Arawakan languages jArawakan languages
- 553 1b wj z6 a979 hLanguages hOther languages hNorth American native languages j Other North American languages tcomprehensive works on Arawakan languages
- 685 03 iexpanded from z6 b983 d19960930 221
- 753 bb aArawak language
- 753 bb aArawakan languages
- 753 bb aArawakan languages—South America
- 753 bb aAsheninca Campa language
- 753 bb aCampa language
- 753 bb aGoajiro language
- 753 bb aGuajiro language
- 753 bb aMaipuran languages
- 753 bb aMapura language

*Record:*

- 008 901001baaaaaaa
- 153 bb z6 a979 hLanguages hOther languages hNorth American native languages jOther North American languages
- 553 1b wk z6 a9839 hLanguages hOther languages hSouth American native languages hQuechuan (Kechuan), Aymaran, Tucanoan, Tupí, Arawakan languages jArawakan languages tArawakan languages of Central America and West Indies

*Scheme:*

--984 Carib, Macro-Gê, Nambiquaran, Panoan languages

Class Hixkaryana, Mataco-Guaicuru, Tacanan, Witotoan languages in --98

*Record:*

- LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500
- 001 <control number>
- 008 901001baaaaaaa
- 084 0b addc c21
- 153 bb z6 a984 hLanguages ahOther languages hSouth American native languages j Carib, Macro-Gê, Nambiquaran, Panoan languages
- 753 bb aAkwe-Shavante language
- 753 bb aCanella language
- 753 bb aCaraja language
- 753 bb aCarajó language
- 753 bb aCarib language
- 753 bb aCariban languages
- 753 bb aCashinawa language
- 753 bb aCatuquina language (Panoan)
- 753 bb aCayapó language
- 753 bb aGê language
- 753 bb aGê-Pano-Carib languages
- 753 bb aKayapó language
- 753 bb aMacro-Gê languages
- 753 bb aNambicuara language
- 753 bb aNambikuara language
- 753 bb aNambiquaran languages
- 753 bb aPanoan languages
- 753 bb aPemón language
- 753 bb aXavante language



## Appendix B

### *Record:*

008 901001baaaaaaa

153 1b z6 a98 hLanguages hOther languages jSouth American native languages

553 1b wj z6 a984 hLanguages hOther languages hSouth American native languages j  
Carib, Macro-Gê, Nambiquaran, Panoan languages tHixkaryana, Mataco-Guaicuru, Tacanan,  
Witotoan languages

---

---

NLM CLASSIFICATION, INDEX TERM RECORD

This example illustrates a full record example for an index term record in the *NLM Classification*, identified by code c (Index term only) in 008/06 (Kind of record). Note that field 154 (General Explanatory Index Term) is used with an explanation of the use of the 154 index term in field 753 (Index Term-Uncontrolled). Code n for not applicable is contained in 008/07 (Type of number), 008/08 (Classification validity), 008/09 (Standard or optional designation), and 008/12 (Synthesized number indication).

*Scheme:*

## Bibliography

Of subjects represented in NLM's classification,  
appropriate classification number preceded by  
the letter Z

Of other subjects, LC's Z schedule

See bibliography section of Introduction for  
further instructions

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500

001 <control number>

008 901214cnnnaanb

084 0b + anlm + c5th ed., rev.

154 bb + aBibliography

753 bb + iOf subjects represented in NLM's classification, appropriate classification number  
preceded by the letter Z

753 bb + iOf other subjects, LC's Z schedule

753 bb + iSee bibliography section of Introduction for further instructions

---

## Appendix B

### UDC SCHEDULE, CLASS 79

The following example is from the *Universal Decimal Classification*, International medium edition, English text (also known as BS 1000M), part 1, page 478. It illustrates MARC classification records from class number 79 to 791.43, which concerns recreation and entertainment. The *UDC* often uses symbols to give instructions for building a complete classification number. In these records, text has been substituted for many symbols, and the symbols could be generated upon display based on the text used.

#### Scheme:

79 RECREATION, ENTERTAINMENT. GAMES.  
SPORT

#### Record:

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
001 <control number>  
008 901001aaaaaaaa  
084 8b + audc + cInternational medium edition  
153 bb + a79 + hThe arts. Recreation. Entertainment. Sport + jRecreation. Entertainment. Games.  
Sport  
753 bb + aEntertainment  
753 bb + aRecreation

#### Scheme:

79-05 Persons and personal  
characteristics in entertainment,  
sport etc.  
*Details from Table 1(k)-05*

#### Record:

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
001 <control number>  
008 901001aaaaaaaa  
084 8b + audc + cInternational medium edition  
153 bb + a79-05 + hThe arts. Recreation. Entertainment. Sport + hRecreation. Entertainment.  
Games. Sport + jPersons and personal characteristics in entertainment, sport, etc.  
683 0b + iDetails from Table + z1(k) + a05

#### Scheme:

79.07 Occupations and activities  
associated with entertainment, sport,  
etc.  
*Details from 7.07*

#### Record:

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500  
001 <control number>  
008 901001aaaaaaaa  
084 8b + audc + cInternational medium edition  
153 bb + a79.07 + hThe arts. Recreation. Entertainment. Sport + hRecreation. Entertainment.  
Games. Sport + jOccupations and activities associated with entertainment, sport, etc.  
683 0b + iDetails from + a7.07

*Scheme:*

.091 Performance, presentation

*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500

001 &lt;control number&gt;

008 901001aaaaaaaa

084 8b#audc#cInternational medium edition

153 bb#a79.091#hThe arts. Recreation. Entertainment. Sport#hRecreation. Entertainment.  
Games. Sport#jPerformance, presentation

753 bb#aPerformance#bpresentation

*Scheme:*.092 Competitions. Contests. Records.  
Championships*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500

001 &lt;control number&gt;

008 901001aaaaaaaa

084 8b#audc#cInternational medium edition

153 bb#a79.092#hThe arts. Recreation. Entertainment. Sport#hRecreation. Entertainment.  
Games. Sport#jCompetitions. Contests. Records. Championships

753 bb#aChampionships

753 bb#aCompetitions

753 bb#aContests

753 bb#aRecords

*Scheme:*791 PUBLIC ENTERTAINMENTS. SPECTACLES.  
DISPLAYS  
→394.2*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500

001 &lt;control number&gt;

008 901001aaaaaaaa

084 8b#audc#cInternational medium edition

153 bb#a791#hThe arts. Recreation. Entertainment. Sport#hRecreation. Entertainment.  
Games. Sport#jPublic entertainments. Spectacles. Displays*Record:*

008 901001aaaaaaaa

153 bb#a394.2#hSocial sciences. Statistics. Politics. Economics. Trade. Law. Government.  
Military affairs. Welfare. Insurance. Education. Folklore#hEthnology. Ethnography. Customs.  
Manners. Traditions. Way of life. Folklore#hPublic life. Social life. Life of the people.  
Everyday life. Court life. Street life#jNational festivals. Folk festivals. Popular recreations553 0b#wl#a791#hThe arts. Recreation. Entertainment. Sport#hRecreation. Entertainment.  
Games. Sport#jPublic entertainments. Spectacles. Displays*Scheme:*.43 Cinema. Films (motion pictures)  
→688.746; 778.5*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500

001 &lt;control number&gt;

008 901001aaaaaaaa

## Appendix B

- 084 8b ‡ audc ‡ cInternational medium edition  
153 bb ‡ a791.43 ‡ hThe arts. Recreation. Entertainment. Sport ‡ hRecreation. Entertainment. Games. Sport ‡ hPublic entertainments. Spectacles. Displays ‡ jCinema. Films (motion pictures)  
553 0b ‡ wl ‡ a688.746 ‡ hApplied sciences. Medicine. Technology ‡ hIndustries, crafts and trades for finished or assembled articles ‡ hFancy goods. Toys. Decorative articles ‡ hToys. Articles for amusement, tricks. Decorations ‡ hTheatre equipment. Panorama equipment. Circus equipment. Music hall equipment. Recreation park equipment ‡ jEquipment for cinemas. Accessories for presenting films  
553 0b ‡ wl ‡ a778.5 ‡ hThe arts. Recreation. Entertainment. Sport ‡ hPhotography and similar processes ‡ hSpecial applications and techniques of photography ‡ jCinematography. Motion -picture photography  
753 bb ‡ aCinema  
753 bb ‡ aFilms  
753 bb ‡ aMotion ‡ bpictures

### Record:

- 008 901001aaaaaaa  
153 bb ‡ a688.746 ‡ hApplied sciences. Medicine. Technology ‡ hIndustries, crafts and trades for finished or assembled articles ‡ hFancy goods. Toys. Decorative articles ‡ hToys. Articles for amusement, tricks. Decorations ‡ hTheatre equipment. Panorama equipment. Circus equipment. Music hall equipment. Recreation park equipment ‡ jEquipment for cinemas. Accessories for presenting films  
553 0b ‡ wl ‡ a791.43 ‡ hThe arts. Recreation. Entertainment. Sport ‡ hRecreation. Entertainment. Games. Sport ‡ hPublic entertainments. Spectacles. Displays ‡ jCinema. Films (motion pictures)

### Record:

- 008 901001aaaaaaa  
153 bb ‡ a778.5 ‡ hThe arts. Recreation. Entertainment. Sport ‡ hPhotography and similar processes ‡ hSpecial applications and techniques of photography ‡ jCinematography. Motion -picture photography  
553 0b ‡ wl ‡ a791.43 ‡ hThe arts. Recreation. Entertainment. Sport ‡ hRecreation. Entertainment. Games. Sport ‡ hPublic entertainments. Spectacles. Displays ‡ jCinema. Films (motion pictures)

### Scheme:

Special auxiliary subdivisions

### Record:

- LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbbb4500  
001 <control number>  
008 901001acaaaaaa  
084 8b ‡ audc ‡ cInternational medium edition  
153 bb ‡ a791.43-1 ‡ c791.43.077 ‡ hThe arts. Recreation. Entertainment. Sport ‡ hRecreation. Entertainment. Games. Sport ‡ hPublic entertainments. Spectacles. Displays ‡ hCinema. Films (motion pictures) ‡ jSpecial auxiliary subdivisions

### Scheme:

791.43-1/-9 Genres of film  
791.43-1/-9 ≈ 82-1/-9, e.g.  
791.43-2 Fictional films. Film dramas



*Record:*

LDR \*\*\*\*\*nwbbb22\*\*\*\*\*nbb4500

001 &lt;control number&gt;

008 901001abaaaaaa

084 8b ꞑ audc ꞑ clInternational medium edition

153 bb ꞑ a791.43-1 ꞑ c791.43-9 ꞑ hThe arts. Recreation. Entertainment. Sport ꞑ hRecreation.  
Entertainment. Games. Sport ꞑ hPublic entertainments. Spectacles. Displays ꞑ hCinema.  
Films (motion pictures) ꞑ hSpecial auxiliary subdivisions ꞑ jGenres of film

753 bb ꞑ aGenres ꞑ bof film

761 b0 ꞑ iSubdivide as ꞑ a82-1/-9 ꞑ ie.g., ꞑ e791.43-2 ꞑ iFictional films. Film dramas







## Multiscript Records

This appendix describes and illustrates models for recording data in multiple scripts in MARC records. One script may be considered the primary script of the *data content* of the record, even though other scripts are also used for data content. (Note: ASCII is used for the structural elements of the record, with most coded data also specified within the ASCII range of characters.) The general models for multiscript data that are followed with MARC 21 are described below.

### Multiscript Record Models

**Model A: Vernacular and transliteration.** The regular fields may contain data in the vernacular or transliteration of the data. Fields 880 are used when data needs to be duplicated to express it in *both* the original vernacular script and transliterated in one or more scripts. There may be unlinked 880 fields.

**Model B: Simple multiscript records.** All data are contained in regular fields and script varies depending on the requirements of the data. Repeatability specifications of all fields are followed. Although the Model B record may contain transliterated data, Model A is preferred if the same data is recorded in both the original vernacular script and transliteration. Field 880 is not used.

In model A, the data in the regular fields is linked to the data in 880 fields by a subfield  $\#6$  that occurs in both of the associated fields. Specifications for field 880 are under that field; description of subfield  $\#6$  is in Appendix A; specifications for character sets and repertoires for scripts are found in *MARC 21 Specifications for Record Structure, Character Sets, and Exchange Media*.

**Example Conventions** - Although the data in the following records are taken from actual classification records, these records are included for illustrative purposes only and are not necessarily usable for classification purposes. The creator of the classification records is not specified in these sample records. Escape sequences are not included in the example records.

### MODEL A - VERNACULAR AND TRANSLITERATION

The following example of a multiscript record follows Model A. In this example, field 153 is expressed in both Cyrillic and Latin scripts.

```
040  bb#a***#brus#c***
084  Ob#alcc      [Library of Congress Classification]
153  bb#6880-01#aHA1#cHA4737#jСтатистики
880  bb#6153-01/(B#aHA1#cHA4737#jStatistics
```



## Appendix C

The following example of a multiscript record follows Model A. In this example, field 153 is expressed in both Hebrew and Latin scripts. Note that the second 880 field is not linked to an associated field. The occurrence number here is 00.

The directionality of the Hebrew text in the examples is right-to-left within each subfield, but the subfields themselves have been recorded left-to-right. The actual input of all the data is in logical order (first-to-last), parts of which may be displayed in various directions depending upon the script and the display interface.

084 0b ‡ alcc        *[Library of Congress Classification]*  
153 bb ‡ 6880-01 ‡ aPR1588 ‡ hEnglish literature ‡ hAnglo-Saxon literature ‡ hIndividual authors  
and works ‡ hBeowulf ‡ hCriticism ‡ jLanguage, grammar, etc.  
730 00 ‡ aBeowulf ‡ xLanguage ‡ 0(DLC)shb85013267  
880 bb ‡ 6153-01/(2/r ‡ a<Caption in Hebrew script linked to associated field>  
880 bb ‡ 6680-00/(2/r ‡ a<Scope note in Hebrew script>

---

### MODEL B - SIMPLE MULTISCRIP RECORDS

---

This example is a multiscript record that follows Model B. In this example, the language of the textual portions of the record is Russian (Cyrillic script). However, the language of the coded information is English (Latin script).

040 bb ‡ a\*\*\* ‡ brus ‡ c\*\*\*  
084 0b ‡ addc ‡ bДесятичная классификация Дьюи ‡ c21  
153 bb ‡ a006.31 ‡ hСпециальные компьютерные методы ‡ hИскусственный  
интеллект ‡ jМашинное обучение  
680 0b ‡ iВключая генетические алгоритмы

---





## Glossary

This glossary gives definitions for terms used in the *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data*. When the term is used in connection with a specific field(s), the content designator to which it applies is in parentheses at the end of the definition. If a term applies only to a particular classification scheme, it is so indicated. A term in *italics* also has a definition in this glossary. Some definitions are reproduced from Edition 20 or Edition 21 of the *Dewey Decimal Classification*, published in 1989 and 1996, respectively, by permission of Forest Press, a division of OCLC Online Computer Library Center, owner of copyright.

---

---

**add or divide like instructions** - Instructions to the classifier to construct a classification number by adding numbers from other parts of the *schedule*, from a *table*, or by basing it on a pattern defined in another part of the schedule. (761; 763; 765)

**base number** - Classification number to which one or more other numbers are appended or added by applying a *table* or other *add or divide like instructions*. (761; 763; 765)

**caption** - A heading that corresponds to a classification number or span and describes the subject covered. (153; 453; 553)

**caption hierarchy** - The *caption(s)* corresponding to classification number(s) at succeeding levels of the classification *hierarchy*. Each element in the caption hierarchy describes a more general topic than the *caption* itself. See also *caption; hierarchy*. (153; 453; 553)

**centered entry (DDC)** - A classification *number span* and its corresponding *caption* representing a subject covered by a summary span of numbers.

**class-elsewhere tracing (DDC)** - A *tracing* that instructs the user to class parts of a class or topics related to it in the number(s) in the 153 field rather than the number(s) in the tracing field. (553)

**classification scheme** - A logical system for the arrangement of knowledge. A fully developed classification scheme specifies categories of knowledge and provides the means to relate the categories to each other and to specify in the classification number all or the most important of the aspects and facets of a subject. (084)

**complex reference** - A reference note that leads the user **from** the number in the 153 field **to** the number in the reference note field when the relationship cannot be adequately conveyed by one or more simple cross references generated from a 453 or 553 *tracing* field. (253, 353)

**controlled index term** - An index term intended to supplement index terms derived from data in the MARC record that is controlled by subject access terms based on a thesaurus or authority file. See also *uncontrolled index term*. (700, 710, 711, 730, 750, 751, 754)

**defined number span** - A range of classification numbers that is defined by a separate *table* or subarrangement. See also *number span; summary number span*.

## Appendix D

**external table** - A *table* that has a special designation and is intended to be applied to numbers within the *classification scheme*. For MARC classification data, each entry in the table is contained in a separate record. See also *table*; *internal table*.

**heading (DDC)** - See *caption*.

**facet** - Any of the various categories into which a given class may be divided, e.g., division of the class "people" by the categories race, age, education, language spoken, and so on.

**hierarchical force (DDC)** - The principle that the attributes of a class as defined in the heading and in certain basic notes apply to all the subdivisions of the class, and to all other classes to which reference is made. (680)

**hierarchical level** - The degree of specificity within a section of the *classification scheme*. In the *Dewey Decimal Classification* the *hierarchical level* is indicated by the length of the notation and the corresponding depth of indentation of the heading in a class. In the *Library of Congress Classification*, the *hierarchical level* is determined by the number of indentations of the caption under the subclass, which indicates its degree of specificity.

**hierarchy** - The arrangement of a *classification scheme* from general to specific.

**index** - A list of terms appended to a classification *schedule* intended to provide subject access to classification numbers within the scheme. (700-75X)

**internal table** - A *table* that appears within the classification schedule that specifies an internal classification subarrangement or a set of tabulated numbers found in add notes under specific numbers. It refers to a specific and limited part(s) of the schedule and does not have a table designation. For MARC classification data, each entry in an *internal table* is contained in a separate field within a classification record. See also *table*; *external table*. (763)

**invalid classification number** - A classification number that cannot be used in a bibliographic or authority record. Generally it refers to the number to be used either in a simple *tracing* or a *complex reference*. (008/08; 253; 453)

**machine-assisted classification** - An online expert system designed to guide library classifiers to the correct classification number for the topic.

**number building** - See *synthesized number*.

**number span** - A range of classification numbers with a beginning and ending number. See also *defined number span*; *summary number span*.

**obsolete classification number** - A classification number associated with a caption that was once valid but is no longer. (008/08; 685)

**optional classification number (DDC)** - An officially recognized optional variation on the standard classification number, as specified in the classification schedule. (008/09; 683)

**root number (DDC)** - The initial digits of a pattern number or span when these digits are not added. (761; 763; 765)



**schedule** - The series of numbers, captions and accompanying instructions or notes that constitute the core of a *classification scheme*. For the *Library of Congress Classification*, the schedules are designated from A-Z with one, two, or three letters denoting the class or subclass within the schedule. In the *Dewey Decimal Classification* the schedules are designated by the series of DDC numbers 001-999.

**scheme** - See *classification scheme*.

**standard subdivision do-not-use tracing (DDC)** - A tracing that instructs the classifier not to add the standard subdivisions in Table 1. Standard subdivisions represent frequently recurring physical forms (dictionaries, periodicals) or approaches (history, research) applicable to any subject or discipline. (253; 453; 553)

**summary number span** - A range of classification numbers that summarize a topic or topics. For the *Dewey Decimal Classification*, see also *centered entry*. (008/07)

**synthesized number** - A number that has been made appropriately specific by adding or appending numbers from a *table* or from other parts of the *schedule*. (008/12; 761; 763; 765; 768)

**table** - A *table* of numbers that may be added to other numbers in the schedules to make a class number appropriately specific to the work being classified. Table numbers cannot stand alone. If a table appears internally within the *schedule*, intended to be applied to a limited group of classification numbers, it may be considered an internal table or subarrangement and recorded in field 763 (Internal Subarrangement or Add Table Entry). Alternatively, a classification agency may consider an internal table an external one for purposes of coding. See also *external table*; *internal table*.

**table of preference (DDC)** - A special type of *internal table* indicating which one of two or more numbers is to be chosen when different characteristics of a subject cannot be shown in full by number building. (768)

**tracing** - A number that leads directly to another number. A simple cross reference display is generated from a tracing field. The *tracing* is located in the record for the number to which it refers. See also *complex reference*. (453; 553)

**uncontrolled index term** - An index term intended to supplement index terms derived from data in the MARC record that is not controlled by subject access terms based on a thesaurus or authority file. For instance, it may provide any additional terms not appearing in the classification data record, such as synonyms, commonly used terms, see references. See also *controlled index term*. (753)

**valid classification number** - A classification number that may be used in a bibliographic or authority record either by itself or with additional letters or numbers. In the case of a *number span*, a portion of it may be used in a bibliographic or authority record. It may be valid for the particular edition of the *classification scheme*, as designated in field 084 (Classification Scheme and Edition). See also *invalid classification number*.







## Format Changes

This section is provided for the lists of format changes that accompany each update to the *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data*.

### MARC 21 FORMAT FOR CLASSIFICATION DATA FORMAT CHANGE LIST

This edition of the *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data* supersedes the December 1990 base text and update No. 1 (July 1995) to the *USMARC Format for Classification Data* as well as the March 1992 base text to the *Canadian MARC Communication Format: Classification Data*. It includes changes resulting from proposals which were considered by the ALA ALCTS/LITA/RASD Machine-Readable Bibliographic Information Committee (MARBI) at its meetings from 1998 through January 2000 and by the Canadian Committee on MARC (CCM) at its meetings from 1998 through January 2000.

■ *Deleted content designator:*

Subfield code

700, 710, 711, 730, 750, 751 - ≠ **w (Authority record control number)** [redefined as ≠ **0 (Record control number)**]

■ *Obsolete content designator:*

Indicator

700 Index Term-Personal Name - 1st indicator (Type of personal name entry element): **2 (Multiple surname)**  
856 Electronic Location and Access - ≠ **g (Uniform Resource Name)**

■ *New content designators:*

Fields

**016 National Bibliographic Agency Control Number**  
**066 Character Sets Present**  
**686 Relationship to Source Note**  
**720 Index Term-Uncontrolled Name**  
**764 Rule Identification**  
**880 Alternate Graphic Representation**

Indicators

762 Table Identification - 1st indicator (Table application sequence): **values b (First), 2 (Second), 3 (Third), 4 (Fourth)**  
856 Electronic Location and Access - 2nd Indicator (Relationship): **values b (No information provided), 0 (Resource), 1 (Version of resource), 2 (Related resource), 8 (No display constant generated)**

Subfield codes

≠ **d Source edition identifier in 084 (Classification Scheme and Edition)**  
≠ **f Authorization in 084 (Classification Scheme and Edition)**  
≠ **n Variations in 084 (Classification Scheme and Edition)**  
≠ **4 Relator code in 700 (Index Term-Personal Name)**  
≠ **4 Relator code in 710 (Index Term-Corporate Name)**  
≠ **j Attribution qualifier in 700 (Index Term-Personal Name)**



## Appendix E

### Code value

Leader - character position 09 (Character coding scheme): codes **b** (MARC-8), **a** (UCS/Unicode)

## Format Changes

This section is provided for the lists of format changes that accompany each update to the *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data*.

---

### MARC 21 FORMAT FOR CLASSIFICATION DATA FORMAT CHANGE LIST

Update No. 1, October 2000

This page documents the changes contained in the first update to the 2000 edition of the *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data*. Update No. 1 (October 2000) includes changes resulting from proposals which were considered by the ALA ALCTS/LITA/RASD Machine-Readable Bibliographic Information Committee (MARBI) at its meetings in July 2000 and by the Canadian Committee on MARC (CCM) at its meetings in July 2000.

---

■ *New content designator*

Subfield code

‡y Link text in 856 (Electronic Location and Access)



## Format Changes

This section is provided for the lists of format changes that accompany each update to the *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data*.

---

### MARC 21 FORMAT FOR CLASSIFICATION DATA FORMAT CHANGE LIST

#### Update No. 2, October 2001

This page documents the changes contained in the second update to the 2000 edition of the *MARC 21 Format for Classification Data*. Update No. 2 (October 2001) includes changes resulting from proposals which were considered by the ALA ALCTS/LITA/RUSA Machine-Readable Bibliographic Information Committee (MARBI) at its meetings in 2001 and by the Canadian Committee on MARC (CCM) at its meetings in 2001.

---

There are no substantive changes to record, however, several examples have been updated and data element descriptions have been revised.

(18)

(19)

(20)















ISBN 0-8444-1000-4



9 780844 410005

90000





TO SHEETS

PS





Network Development &  
MARC Standards Office

Library of  
Congress



National Library  
of Canada

Bibliothèque nationale  
du Canada